

## Gemini Central Administration Guide

Version 3.0

## CONTENTS

#### **Prerequisites**

#### **Overview & New Features**

#### **System Initialization**

Introduction Initial setup

Creating an Appliance IP address

Static IP address assignment

DHCP Address assignment

Gemini Central - Web Interface

Localization Settings

License Activation

Use or request a Licence File

Connect to a Licence Server

Change Admin Password

Initial Login Screen

Deployable Roles for Gemini Central

Standalone Node

The Management Center Node

**Recommended Actions Feature** 

Bulk Provisioning Feature

Bulk Provisioning - Instance Discovery

**Bulk Provisioning - Network Settings** 

Bulk Provisioning - Hostname assignment

Bulk Provisioning - Change Admin Password

Bulk Provisioning - Connect to LDAP

Bulk Provisioning - SSH Authentication

Bulk Provisioning - Summary Screen

Adding instances to an existing Manage Cluster

Gemini Central OS child instances:

Adjust Storage Plan

#### **HOME** Dashboard

Featured Platform

Integration Center

#### Splunk Installation

Activate Splunk

Splunk Clustered Environment Installation

Building the Splunk Environment

Step 1: Creating the Splunk Environment

Step 2: Create Splunk Clusters

Step 3: Organize the Nodes

Step 4: Locate Nodes

Initial Splunk Environment

Verification of the Splunk Environment

Post Splunk Cluster Deployment Features and Tasks

Splunk Activation

Splunk Web Port (8000)

Splunk Receiver Port (9997)

Splunk Boot-Start

Splunk Workload Management features

Splunk admin password

SSL Passwords

Heartbeat monitoring feature

Resource activity

Using the Splunk Web interface

Adding more Nodes

Adding a Splunk License Manager

Adding a Splunk Monitoring Console

Standalone Splunk Installation

#### Gemini Explore

Activating Gemini Central Licensing Gemini Central (Beta Trial) Integrating Inspect for Splunk Admin

#### **Tableau Server**

Installation of Tableau Server

#### MinIO Object Storage

#### LOG Menu

The features of Gemini Log Receiver Rule Manager

Log Receiver - Rule Manager Dashboard

Log Receiver - Source

Log Receiver - Destination

Destination Log File Splitting - Overview

Destination Log File Splitting - By host

Destination Log File Splitting - By Facility

Destination Log File Splitting - By Level(Severity)

Destination Log File Splitting - By Program

Destination Log File Splitting - User Custom Path

Log Receiver Settings - Filter

Filter by Host

Filter by Netmask

Filter by Match

Forwarding Log Receiver events into Splunk

Enable Splunk Indexers to receive events from the Log Receiver

Verify the Receiver Port at the Indexers

Creating an Index at the Indexers

Testing Log Receiver Rules before enabling forwarding (optional)

Create a Heavy Forwarder to forward Log Receiver data

Creating a High-Availability Syslog environment

Load Balancing a syslog feed

#### **NODE Menu**

System Time
Name
Hostname
Local Hosts
Network
NIC Bonding
Port Redirect
OS Users
FTP
FTP Service
FTP User
SSH
SNMP
SNMP
SNMP Service
SNMP Agent (polling option)

SNMP Agent version 1 SNMP Agent version 2c SNMP Agent version 3 SNMP Trap Destinations (trapping option) SNMP Trap Thresholds

#### Failover

Creating a Failover Group

Option A - The process to set up a single Failover Group

Joining a Failover Group

Option B - Creating a reciprocal failover Group with optional Load Balancing

#### Storage

Storage Devices

Mount disk and mount points

Encryption and Decryption

Create Software RAID Disk

Create a Logical Volume

Merge Disk

Add an NFS Mount

Add a CIFS Mount

Add an S3 Mount

Add an iSCSI Target

Manage Swap space

Log Forwarding

Diagnostics

Rsync Backup

Benchmark

#### Cluster

Manage Nodes

Adding instances to an existing Manage Group

Manage Groups

Execute Jobs

Backup Center

Backup Job Detail

Restoring Backups

Membership Settings

**Bulk Provision** 

#### License

Understanding Gemini Central Licensing

License Status

Remote Licenses

Inventory

License Server

#### Splunk

AWS Provisioning

Prerequisites for AWS Provisioning

AWS Provisioning Procedure

Daemon

Web Interface

Apps

Splunk Diag

Optimizer

Config Editor

Versioning

**Rollback Option** 

Recover option

Command

Installing a Splunk App

#### Splunk Environments

Adding a Node (Unassigned Nodes)

Add a single Node

Add a pre-existing Splunk Indexer Cluster

Add a pre-existing Splunk Search Head Cluster

Add a Group of standalone Splunk Nodes

Assigning Unassigned Nodes and Clusters to a Splunk Environment

Assign to Environment

Create New Cluster

Add to Cluster

Add an additional Indexer or Search Head to a Splunk Cluster

New Instance install - Clusters and Standalone Instances

Adopting remote Splunk Instances and Clusters

Creating a 'shell environment'

Assigning an external Splunk Cluster to an Environment

Assigning Splunk Standalone Nodes Assigning a new remote Indexer or Search Head to a Cluster Deploy Independent Stream Forwarder Operations and Administration of Splunk Splunk Environment Level Options Upgrading Splunk using the Rolling Upgrade Feature Manual Upgrade of a Splunk Instance Splunk Cluster Level Options Splunk Standalone Options Unassigned Nodes Panel Options

#### Gemini Agents

Known Issues and Restrictions - Read before progressing Splunk Interface Detail Prerequisites for Installation Supported Operating Systems System Requirements on the Target Host Installation of Gemini Agent Step 1: Management Center - Enable Gemini Agent distribution Step 2: Gemini Agent - Prerequisites (Splunk Host) Step 3: Installing the Gemini Agent - Splunk Host Gemini Agent - CLI options at the Splunk host agent status agent --version agent restart agent configure agent uninstall agent stop/start Gemini Agent - Troubleshooting Upgrading the Gemini Agent

#### Settings

System Admin

Admin Web

Backup & Restore

Diagnose

System Update

Information

Software

Hardware

Listen Port

Audit Report

Authentication

Manage User

User Permissions

LDAP

Single Sign-on (SSO)

Password Policy

HTTP Proxy

Login Banner

Reboot

Shutdown

#### **CLI Commands**

The help Command

Commands for initial setup

The network Command

The config Command

The admin Command (setup options)

The agent Command - Management Center Node

agent status

agent --version

agent restart

agent configure

agent uninstall

#### agent stop/start

#### Commands for Information Gathering

The version Operator

The model Operator

The service-tag Operator

The service Command (status operator)

The service Command (listen-port operator)

The system Command (info operator)

Commands for Troubleshooting

The admin Command (Troubleshooting)

The admin Command (reset-password operator)

The admin Command (set-password operator) The admin Command (gen-ssl operator) The network Command (reset operator) The service Command (restart operator) The splunk Command Reset Splunk Environments The system Command (patch operator) Commands for System Operations System Reboot System Power Off Default Passwords for CLI Operations

## Prerequisites

- Cabling An ethernet cable and an available ethernet switch connection.
- Networking One IP address which can be assigned to the Gemini instance ethernet Port 1 (address, netmask and gateway are required for manual configuration. DHCP is also supported)
- Accessories VGA monitor and USB keyboard
- Client A client PC on the same network as the Gemini instance running a suitable web browser.
- Splunk: Access to a Splunk Enterprise installation tarball (splunk-\*.\*.\*-\*-Linux-x86\_64.tgz).
- Tableau & Explore: Internet access is required for installation of these Featured Platforms.

#### Important Note on Network Access Control

To administer and run Gemini instances and its services, certain communication channels between clients and nodes are required. As a minimum, the following ports are required:

Port	Reason
<b>443</b> /TCP	Https access
<b>22</b> /TCP	SSH access
<b>4444</b> /TCP	Cluster communication

As the Web Interface and SSH console offer low-level system access, try to ensure that network settings are biased towards a '**host-only**' approach and are not exposed to public access (ie. Anywhere, 0.0.0.0/0). Depending on the deployment, add inbound/outbound rules as needed.

## **Overview & New Features**

Welcome to Gemini Central - the new name for Gemini Enterprise Manage!

Recent iterations of Gemini software have been demonstrating the advantages of having a **Management Center** node at its core that can oversee an entire Splunk environment, or even multiple Splunk environments.

Recently introduced features such as the central collation of Splunk diags and a central backup solution for all Splunk/Gemini config files have been very popular with customers. To complement this, we are introducing another new feature called, **'Recommended Actions'** that advises on outstanding issues that need to be addressed on a Gemini instance. From the **Management Center** node, selecting a 'Recommended Action' relevant to any node will automatically open it in a separate browser tab for immediate addressing.



Another exciting new feature, **AWS Provisioning**, enables central provisioning of complete Splunk Indexer and Search Head clusters based on AWS EC2 instances using **Splunk AMI's** direct from a Gemini Central node, typically the **Management Center**.

This is a big departure to the use of our hardened OS built-in to the **Gemini AMI**, but will enable customers to get up and running quickly with complex Splunk environments on **AWS** in just a few minutes, provided the customer has their AWS secret keys and passwords available.

A **Gemini Agent** will be installed to each Splunk instance during the install, allowing the **Management Center** node central observation and a fast Splunk upgrade facility.



## System Initialization

## Introduction

If this is the first, or primary Gemini Central instance to be installed, use the following section to guide you through creating a '**Management Center**' that can be used to import existing, remote, or newly created Gemini instances for centralized Splunk and operational management purposes.

In order to import existing remote Splunk environments (non-Gemini instances) see the <u>Gemini Agent</u> <u>Installation</u> section of this manual.

Gemini Central software should be installed to a suitable host platform using an ISO file. Gemini appliances will have this software built-in, offering a security-hardened environment out of the box.

The naming convention for Gemini Central software uses the following configuration:

#### gemini-appliance-<major\_release>.<minor\_release>.<bug\_fix>.iso

An example would therefore be:

#### gemini-appliance-2.7-251.iso

Please contact Gemini Support (<u>support@geminidata.com</u>) if you require the very latest, or indeed an earlier working version of the ISO file.

Use the chosen ISO file to bring up a suitable instance. This instance could be a physical appliance, a VMware server or a Cloud-based machine within AWS for example.

Recommended hardware, specifications and quickstart instructions for these instances can be found using the following links:

- Gemini Central Quickstart Guide 3.0 (Physical Hardware)
- Gemini Central Quickstart Guide 3.0 (VMware)
- Gemini Central Quickstart Guide 3.0 (AWS)
- Gemini Central Quickstart Guide 3.0 (Azure)

When starting an instance for the very first time, ensure it has an IP address. Once an IP address has been assigned, all subsequent configuration, amendments, installations and future upgrades for this and other instances can all be achieved using the **Management Center**.

## Initial setup

When the host instance 'boots' to our ISO file on a physical appliance, the following screen should be observed.

If the 'login' prompt is not visible on the connected monitor, press 'enter' on the keyboard a few times. The login prompt should then appear.



Due to the automatic selection of option 1; 'Install Gemini Central', the above screen may not actually be observed, but following installation of Gemini software, which can take 10 - 15 minutes, the screen will return a login prompt, similar to this one below:

gemini-1cece3 login:

You now have two options; If this appliance is to be included in an existing Gemini Central environment, and it has been issued an IP address via DHCP, simply login to your Gemini **Management Center** node and continue with instructions contained in the <u>Provisioning Appliances</u> section of this manual.

Alternatively, continue with this section if you need to achieve any of the following:

- If this is to become the Gemini Management Center or a standalone instance
- If you need to provision this instance with an IP address or DNS hostname
- If you need to change an IP address already assigned to this instance

At the terminal prompt, login to the interface using the following credentials:

#### username: **sbox**

password: **facing jet function drive** (note the spaces are important!)

You will be prompted to change the default password. Please complete this exercise and ensure that you record the new password. Note that there is a default expiry policy of 60 days on this account. If you wish to freeze this for the foreseeable future, navigate immediately to the **Settings / Password Policy** dashboard and remove the checkmark from the relevant box.

**Note:** Contact <u>support@geminidata.com</u> if you have any issues or questions with the initial setup process.

#### **Creating an Appliance IP address**

If you need to create or change the IP address assigned to the instance, remain at the terminal prompt and use the '**sbox network**' command to create/change an IP address that will be used for this Gemini instance.

Type the following at the prompt to reveal all network options available.

sbox network

```
[sbox@gemini ~]$ sbox network
Usage: sbox network [OPTIONS]
[OPTIONS]
                Reset all network interface to default value.
      --reset
      -nic
                 Setup specific network interface, required for
                 below options.
      --disable Disable specific NIC, when given it ignores
                 --dhcp, -ip, -netmask and -gateway options.
      --dhcp
                 Config the specific NIC as DHCP.
                Set IP address for specific NIC.
      -ip
      -netmask
                Set subnet mask for specific NIC, required when
                 set IP address.
               Set gateway on specific NIC. Optional.
      -gateway
[sbox@gemini ~]$
```

Using this command it is required that we create an IP address. Two methods are available to achieve this.

- Assign a static IP address (preferred option)
- Assign an IP address using DHCP

#### Static IP address assignment

We recommend that you create a permanent IP address for Gemini Manage.

Identify the name of the device network interface using the following command at the terminal:

```
ip a
```

The example output shown below reveals that the interface name is 'nic0', and the current ip address is 192.168.1.100.

```
[sbox@sboxnodel ~]$ ip a
1: lo: <LOOPBACK,UP,LOWER_UP> mtu 65536 qdisc noqueue state UNKNOWN
    link/loopback 00:00:00:00:00 brd 00:00:00:00:00
    inet 127.0.0.1/8 scope host lo
        valid_lft forever preferred_lft forever
```

```
inet6 ::1/128 scope host
    valid_lft forever preferred_lft forever
2: nic0: <BROADCAST,MULTICAST,UP,LOWER_UP> mtu 1500 qdisc pfifo_fast state UP qlen 1000
    link/ether 08:00:27:9e:96:c0 brd ff:ff:ff:ff:ff
    inet 192.168.1.100/24 brd 192.168.1.255 scope global dynamic nic0
    valid_lft 68091sec preferred_lft 68091sec
```

To create or change the current IP Address, at the terminal prompt use the following command to apply your chosen IP address.

sbox network -nic <network\_interface> -ip <chosen\_IP\_address>
-netmask <Netmask> -gateway <Gateway\_IP\_address>

Example:

```
sbox network -nic nic0 -ip 192.168.1.100 -netmask 255.255.255.0
-gateway 192.168.1.1
```

**Note:** Network interface values can be verified using the 'ifconfig' or 'ip a' commands. Additional IP addresses can be assigned using the Management Center, if required.

Note

To create a '**Host only**' instance to operate solely within the local network, omit the **-gateway** option when using the above command.

#### **DHCP Address assignment**

If you wish to configure the network interface using DHCP use the following alternative command:

```
sbox network -nic <Network interface name> --dhcp
ie. sbox -nic nic0 --dhcp
```

## Gemini Central - Web Interface

Further configuration of the instance can be completed using the web interface.

Using a supported web browser, navigate to:

https://<ip\_address or FQDN of instance>

If you have an instance already dedicated to the role of **Management Center**, simply use this interface to add and manage all other Gemini instances which can be added as '**Unassigned Nodes**'.

If this instance is to become the **Management Center**, or if you just want to login to the web interface, use a suitable browser to access the IP address assigned, ensuring that you use the '**https:**' prefix.

Accept the browser certificate exception on initial opening, to reveal the following *End User Software License Agreement* license screen.

CIVINI		
		

After reading the terms and conditions, select '**Accept**' to advance to the next screen which will vary depending on the operating platform. This section specifically references our hardware **Appliance** platform. For Software platforms, please refer to the individual AWS or Azure Quickstart guides for details of the start-up procedure.

#### **Localization Settings**

This screen allows you to set **locale** information regarding **language**, **timezone** and an appropriate DNS recognized **Hostname** for your instance.

Gemini Central natively supports four languages;

- English (American)
- Traditional Chinese
- German
- Japanese

Select your preferred language to adjust the user experience accordingly.

Use the '**Node**' menu of the web interface at any time to modify these settings in the future.

NI	
Localiza Specify default operating characteristics for this appliance. T menu.	ation hese can also be changed at a later time from the setup
Choose System Language English (United States) ~	
Hostname gemini-0800277c2740 Timezone Region	
America ~	
Los_Angeles (PDT, UTC -07:00) V	NEXT
	HEAT

#### License Activation

This step allows you to activate the appropriate license for your intended use.

#### Enterprise Edition (Purchased Licence)

The most common option, select if you have an appropriate **Gemini Licence Server** in place.

#### Enterprise Edition (30 days Trial)

Select if you are entering into a trial of our product and simply want to test out the features, or you have not yet obtained a license from Gemini Data.

The License status can be upgraded to **Enterprise Edition** at any time during the 30 day trial period.

#### Free Edition

The Free Edition may be used indefinitely, but is restricted to 3 instances and some features have been disabled (see Note below)

Enterpris	e Edition (Purchased License)
Select this optic connecting to a	n to use a previously-purchased paid license. You will be provided the option of applying a newly generated license or license server.
Enterpris	e Edition (30 Days Trial)
The full-featured appliance revert	Enterprise Edition can be used for trial purposes for 30 days with no limitations. If not purchased within the trial period, the s to the Free Edition.
Free Editi	on
The Free Editior comparision of	can be used indefinitely but is restricted to maximum of 3 servers and also restricted in terms of features. Click here for a features.

Note	<ul> <li>In the Free Edition the following features are restricted;</li> <li>No Failover function</li> <li>No LDAP Authentication</li> <li>No support of external storage, including NFS, CIFS, and S3.</li> <li>No remote license server.</li> <li>Limited Splunk configuration Versioning, restricted to roll back to last 3 versions.</li> </ul>
	Gemini Cluster features affected;
	<ul> <li>Op to 4 hodes in a cluster in maximum.</li> <li>No scheduled jobs.</li> <li>Jobs for Splunk upgrade are restricted.</li> <li>Jobs for Gemini instance boot control are restricted.</li> <li>Jobs for Splunk service control are restricted.</li> </ul>

#### Use or request a Licence File

If you want to activate a pre-purchased Enterprise license, or initiate the request of an Enterprise License, and you do not have an existing Gemini License Server - select the first option, '**Use a License file**'.

Camini
Activate Enterprise Edition License
Use a License File Select this option if you do not use a license server. The next step will walk through the process of requesting a license file and applying it to your server.
Connect to a License Server Select this option if you do use an existing remote license server. The next step will ask for details about the license server in order to connect and validate the license.
BACK

This reveals a three-step process, as outlined in the screen below, beginning with a License request process.

Use the 'Licences' menu of the web interface at any time to modify or view License settings.

CHAINI		
Step 1 - Generate a license Click on Download Reques	License Request and Application Request teleow to create a request file on your machine that contains identifying	
Information needed for lice Download Request Step 2 - Submit Request to Create a Support Ticket on Indicate the company nam from Step 1 to the support	receive License File the Gemini Support site and attach the request file from Step 1 above. Please and your contact information in the request. Be sure to attach the request file toted:	
Support Portal Step 3 - Apply License File Once you have recieved a t activate this appliance usin	icense File from Gemini sent via email, click on Apply License to upload the file and g the issued license.	
DAUK		

If you are applying for a License file during the **Bulk Provision** process, there can be a delay of up to 72 hours before your License file is made available. In order to proceed with the Bulk Provision process, use the '**Back**' button after completing **Step 2** of the License application wizard, and select the '**Trial License'** option.

On receipt of your **License File**, complete **Step 3** of the License application wizard using the '**License**' menu of the web interface at any time within the 30 day trial period.

#### **Connect to a Licence Server**

Alternatively, if you are using a Gemini License Server to manage all available licenses, selecting this option will allow you to specify license server information, including IP Address and token, in order to perform the validation.

CIVINI	
	License Server Validation
	Specify details about the license Server to be used for validation. Click on Next to confirm the settings.
	License Server IP address
	Token String
	Weight 1
	BACK

#### **Change Admin Password**

The final step of the Gemini instance initialization wizard is to create an administration account to enable access to the web interface. This is a mandatory requirement.

\*\*\* It is essential to record the admin account and password in a safe place \*\*\*

Chan	ge Admin Password		
Change the default password for the Admin account for this Gemini appliance. Follow best practices and any applicable corporate policies to ensure security. This can be changed later within Settings.			
show password			
Confirm Password			

This completes all options regarding the initial setup process of Gemini Central software, and the following screen should confirm this;

Success
That's it, appliance configuration is complete!
Click on Get Started to launch the Gemini Enterprise Manager (GEM) which will allow all further management and advanced configuration of this appliance and your Gemini cluster. Remember to use your new password for the admin account to login to the Gemini Enterprise Manager. You can also bookmark the URL for easy return access.
If you need further assistance, please refer to the Gemini Support Site or contact our support team at support@geminidata.com.
GET STARTED

#### Initial Login Screen

Upon completion of the setup process and after selecting the **Get Started** button from the Success screen you will be presented with the login screen.

Welcome to Gemini Enterprise: Manager			
Password			
			LOGIN

Login to Gemini Manage with the username 'admin' and the password created in the previous step.

Return visits to this interface will proceed directly to the login screen. Configured settings may still be changed within the corresponding areas within Manage.

Further options can be achieved from the Gemini web interface, and some useful examples are given below;

- Create a **Management Center** from this instance used to control multiple Gemini nodes
- Activate **Splunk** on this instance for use as a Splunk server
- Activate **Gemini Explore** on this instance to make use of **Inspect for Splunk Admin** or create analysis models
- Activate **Tableau** on this instance for Business Intelligence purposes
- Activate MinIO for additional storage purposes like Splunk Smartstore

#### Deployable Roles for Gemini Central

Gemini Central instances will fall into three categories that will determine its deployment role: **Standalone**, **Management Center**, or a **Member** node.

This category will be displayed at the top of the web interface, and all nodes will start out as a Standalone node.

When nodes are grouped and in control of a Management Center, such as when the **Bulk Provisioning** feature has been used, nodes will naturally become Member nodes controlled by a Management Center node. All other nodes will remain as Standalone.

Irrelevant functions for specific roles will be restricted, thus preventing misuse and confusion from inappropriate functions.



#### Standalone Node

If you wish to use this instance simply as a standalone node, for instance as a Log Receiver, or Splunk Deployment server, use the web interface menus to configure the features required.

If you wish to use Splunk on the instance, you will first have to '**Activate**' it from the **Home** dashboard of the Gemini web interface.

#### The Management Center Node

The Gemini **Management Center** should be considered a special standalone instance. It is usually the first Gemini Central instance created and can provide a central location for the control and management of all your Gemini instances, with features that include;

• Centralized control and monitoring of Gemini instances

- Fast and efficient creation of Splunk clusters (Bulk Provisioning)
- Management, scaling and upgrading of Splunk instances and clusters(Splunk Environments)
- Provides a backup repository for all Gemini and Splunk config files(Centralized Backup Center)
- Provides a central 'jump server' for outstanding issues discovered by the Recommended Actions feature(see below)
- Provides a central repository for Splunk Diag files.

Using the Management Center as a jump server, most of the administration in a Gemini Cluster can be achieved centrally.



- The SSH key of the Management Center is authorized on each Member Node
- Recommended Action alerts are consolidated on the Management Center
- Jump straight to another Member Node for administration without additional authentication

#### **Recommended Actions Feature**

In the top right-hand corner of Gemini Central's **Home** dashboard, a small bell icon can often be seen together with a number.

This number represents an unusual system status or incomplete setting within a specific Gemini node.

Selecting the issue itself will provide recommendations based on best practices to prevent misuse and maximize the capabilities.



When used from the Management Center node, this feature will list issues from *all* Gemini Nodes within its Managed Group. Selecting an issue from another instance will open the instance concerned in another browser tab so that it can be addressed locally.

The main advantages of this feature are listed below;

- The ability to both detect and report various types of problems prompting the administrator to correct them
- Alert messages include INFO, WARNING, and DANGER are color-coded for ease of reference

• Alerts for all Member Nodes can be viewed and addressed directly from the Management Center node acting as a 'jump server'

The entire list of potential Alerts can be seen in the table below;

Issue/Problem/Failure Detected	Importance	Advisory Message
Detects if the ethernet cable is connected but not yet configured.	WARNING	Configure Ethernet
Detects if the DNS has been configured or if the instance is unable to resolve a domain name.	WARNING	Configure DNS
Detects if there are block devices unassigned/undefined.	INFO	Configure Storage
Detects if it is in Free tier.	INFO	Apply License
Detects if there is a valid licence.	INFO	Apply License
<i>Management Center only.</i> Detects if there are member nodes added.	INFO	Add member nodes
Detects if there is a featured platform installed or if the log receiver has not been configured.	INFO	Featured Platform
Detects if any accounts have been created other than the defaults.	INFO	Create new users
Detects if any one of the block devices has reached its high watermark(90%).	DANGER	Expand disk space

#### **Bulk Provisioning Feature**

The Bulk Provisioning process is a step-by-step workflow that allows the configuration of multiple instances. This is usually achieved by the nominated **Management Center** instance.

If you are using **Gemini Central** to build Splunk clusters, whatever the platform; hardware appliances, cloud instances, or virtual nodes, you will almost certainly want to make use of the **Bulk Provisioning** method for the deployment of multiple instances. For your convenience, we have made this one of the first sections of this Administration Guide - your **Gemini Central** journey therefore, starts here!

Ensure that the following are true before continuing;

- Each instance contains the installed Gemini Central software
- Each instance has been powered on

• Each instance is accessible on the network

To begin the **Bulk Provision** process of your Gemini instances, login to the Gemini web interface of your chosen **Management Center** as the 'admin' user.

Select the 'Bulk Provision' option from the Cluster menu.

номе	Cluster	Bulk Provision
	Manage Nodes Manage Groups Execute Jobs Backup Center Membership Settings Bulk Provision	This wizard allows for the initial configuration of multiple Gemini Appliances in one seamless process. This includes the provisioning, naming and network configuration of all appliances. Note that completing this process will automatically designate this appliance as the • Cluster Parent Node • License Server Before continuing with this wizard, all the other appliances need to be powered up and network ready, but do not perform the Setup process. It is also recommended that you have the following information available. • IP Address of each appliances (or network subnet for automatic discovery) • DNS Server Information, if used
CLUSTER		CANCEL

This will invoke the **Bulk Provisioning wizard** allowing for the simultaneous configuration of multiple instances. This option covers all aspects of configuration including; server naming, network configuration, LDAP access, and software installation.

Select the 'Next' button to navigate through the wizard.

#### **Bulk Provisioning - Instance Discovery**

The first step will discover and confirm instances that are to be configured. The discovery process can be achieved in one of two ways:

**Use of a text file:** If all the IP addresses of instances are known, you may add them to a text file containing one IP/DNS name per line. This can be uploaded during the discovery process and has the advantage of naming the instances with logical Splunk instance names, ie. idx\_01, idx\_02

**Subnet search:** Alternatively, the instances can be discovered on the network by performing an IP subnet scan, using CIDR notation to specify (ie, 192.168.156.0/24).

Note that the scope of the subnet will determine the length of time taken for the scan to complete.

Jpload Text File with IP addresse	s
Jpload a file contain the IP addresse surrent node need not be included.	s of each appliance, one per line, stored in an unformatted text file. Th
Auto-Discovery using IP Subnet	
Discover appliances automatically us	ing the specified IP subnet, in CIDR Notation
Subnet	
172.27.11.0/24	
2 instance(s) have been identifie	during network scan.
Of those identified, 2 nodes are e	lligible for provisioning.
Click "next" to continue	

#### **Bulk Provisioning - Network Settings**

This step determines the mechanism used for assigning IP addresses to the instances. Two options are available here;

#### • Network settings - DHCP assigned

The default option uses a dynamic assignment of IP addresses using a DHCP Server. Note: This could mean a change to an instance IP address under some circumstances, but it is a fully automated solution.

#### • Network settings - Static assigned (preferred option)

This option will also utilize DHCP. The difference here is that DHCP is used for the initial IP address assignment only. From then on, the IP address becomes 'static'. This is useful when using a temporary DHCP server during deployment.

CIMINI		
	Bulk Provisioning - Network Settings	
t	DNS Server 8.8.8.8	
	Network settings - DHCP assigned Use dynamically assigned network settings (by DHCP server)	
	Network settings - Static assigned Use static assigned network settings. All the settings will use currently assigned configurations.	
	BACK	
Provisioning Configuration updated		×

#### Bulk Provisioning - Hostname assignment

If you have chosen the '**Static assigned**' option you have two options to consider regarding **hostname** assignment;

#### Using a Reverse DNS Lookup

If DNS records have been assigned for each instance, this option will use the hostname discovered through the DNS server. This requires an 'A record' entry for each device, and the inclusion of a valid **DNS server** address in the entry box provided.

#### Specify Custom Hostname Pattern

This option allows the specification of a custom string to automatically compose each hostname. The following tokens can be used dynamically in this process:

• **\$service\_tag\$** - will use the 'service tag' of the instance, as indicated on the box or available from the Gemini support website.

• **\$increment\$** - provides an automatically incrementing number usually used with a text prefix. The example below will create instances named; **gemini-1**, **gemini-2**, **gemini-3**, etc

Bulk Provision	ing - Hostname
his step allows the assignment of host names fo wo methods for assignment.	r each appliance being provisioned. Select one of
Use Reverse DNS Lookup	
Use this option to query a DNS server for a PTR record o	f each appliance IP address to be used as the hostname
Note: this option requires a valid DNS Server	
Sinderneng - substitutes the official Service Tag for Pattern	the appliance
aemini-\$increment\$	1

#### Bulk Provisioning - Change Admin Password

This step is used to specify the password for the '**admin**' account on **each** instance to be configured, allowing access to the Gemini web interface. This can be changed at a later date if required.

It is recommended that you use a strong password and follow the recommended appropriate password policy guidelines as required. Note that when using bulk provisioning, all instances will be updated with the same admin password.

change the default password for the Adm pplicable coporate policies to ensure see haracters.	nin account for this curity. This can be cl	Gemini appliance. Fol aanged later within So	low best practices and any attings. Minimum length 7
Enter New Password			
show password			
Confirm Password			

#### **Bulk Provisioning - Connect to LDAP**

If you wish to use an LDAP server as a resource to access each instance, carefully enter the **Base DN** and other details required in the following screen.

This can be set at a later date, so feel free to 'skip' this configuration.

Please refer to the **LDAP** section, located within **Settings / Authentication** of this guide for more details.

Please note that LDAP authentication is optional, and by default the instance resorts to local account-based authentication.

If you do not require to set up an LDAP connection, select the 'skip' button to move on.

Bulk Provisioning -	Connect to LDAP	
esource Name		
Admin from IT Group		
ase DN		
OU=IT, DC=example, DC=com		
Login Attribute		
uid		
Host		
ad1.example.com		
Port		
389		
SSL SSL		
BACK	SKIP	NEXT

#### **Bulk Provisioning - SSH Authentication**

This step allows for the control of SSH authentication.

Use the first panel to set SSH passwords for the built-in '**sbox**' and '**splunk**' user accounts. Be sure to carefully record both of these assigned passwords.

Alternatively, use the second panel here to upload the **SSH private key** to complete the connection

Use a password for SSH authention Set a password for the 'sbox' and 'splut characters.	cation unk' user which are available as SSH credential. Minimum length 6
Password for 'sbox'	Password for 'splunk'
show password	show password
Jpload SSH key Jse public-key authentication to conn	lect to the CLI using SSH.
Jpload SSH key Jae public-key authentication to conn	ect to the CLI using SSH. Drop file here or click to select

#### Bulk Provisioning - Summary Screen

The **summary** screen lists all the instances about to be provisioned along with their configuration settings. It should be used as a final review and confirmation step before starting an automated configuration.

It is also strongly recommended that you use the **Download CSV** option here, as it contains all the instance details provisioned during this process for future reference.

Select the '**Start**' button to initiate the automated provisioning process, which can take several minutes or longer depending on the number of instances being provisioned.

The status of each instance is updated in real-time. After all instances have been provisioned, select **Finished** to complete the process.

	Duik i	TOVISIONIN	, - Summary	
ovisioning Node	s			
P Address	Hostname	Use LDAP	SSH Authentication	Status
72.27.11.109	gemini-5004-57	No	Password	<b></b>
72.27.11.110	gemini-001	No	Password	<ul> <li>Image: A set of the set of the</li></ul>
72.27.11.111	gemini-002	No	Password	<ul> <li>Image: A set of the set of the</li></ul>
72.27.11.112	gemini-003	No	Password	<b>I</b>
72.27.11.113	gemini-004	No	Password	<ul> <li>Image: A start of the start of</li></ul>
72.27.11.118	gemini-005	No	Password	<b>I</b>
72.27.11.115	gemini-006	No	Password	<b>I</b>
72.27.11.116	gemini-007	No	Password	<ul> <li>Image: A set of the set of the</li></ul>
72.27.11.117	gemini-008	No	Password	<b>I</b>
ccess!				
u are all set. All ap configure additio	ppliances have been setu nal settings such as Tim	ip successfully. ezone and install S	plunk, continue by:	
View Cluster Top	ology			
Create Node Grou	ups			
Execute Cluster J Activate Splunk N	obs fanager			

Use the **Cluster / Manage Nodes** dashboard of the Management Center node to view the Manage Cluster of Gemini instances.



At this stage, it is likely that you will want to install and configure Splunk clusters using the provisioned Nodes. For details regarding this process, please refer to the <u>Splunk Installation</u> section for details.

#### Adding instances to an existing Manage Cluster

The addition of other Gemini nodes into an existing **Manage Cluster**, must be achieved from the **'Parent**' node. A parent node is the main control node for each unique Gemini Cluster. The most common parent node is of course the **Management Center**, and the addition of other instances to the parent cluster can be achieved using its **Cluster / Manage Nodes** dashboard.

NoteIn Version 2.8 and above, the addition of instances can be completed from the<br/>Management Center itself. Previous versions of Manage required the Parent Token<br/>String to be added to each child instance individually.

#### Gemini Central OS child instances:

Additional child nodes that include Gemini Central software could be; Gemini appliances, cloud instances or virtual nodes. In order to add these as child nodes, navigate to the **Cluster / Manage Nodes** dashboard, and select the **'+ Add Node**' button to enter its hostname or IP address.

#### Adjust Storage Plan

Beware of disk partitions and mount points. Not all disks are mounted on the system with default partitions, especially the Gemini Appliance models. There are different storage configurations on each appliance model;

- Onboard flash drives
- All hard disk drive(HDD)
- All solid-state disks(SSD)
- Hybrid configurations of the above

If the Appliance is planned to store a large amount of data, ie. a Splunk indexer, complete the following checks before you start to deploy any applications:

- 1. Understand the storage devices and mount points on the Appliance. Navigate to **NODE / Storage** / **Storage** and you will see a list view of storage devices and mount points.
- 2. HDD and SSD are mounted on the following mount points by default:
  - HDD disk will be mounted on /opt/mnt/hdd01.
  - SSD disk will be mounted on /opt/mnt/ssd01.
  - Not applicable to the following models: G1000, IB-1050D.
- 3. Design your storage plan and adjust the logical volumes and mount points. The default storage plan might not satisfy your needs. You may adjust them to the new logical volumes and new mount points. For example:
  - Unmount SSD and remove it from a logical volume, and merge it into **/opt** to extend it's capacity.
  - Unmount HDD and mount it on **/opt/splunk** so that the whole splunk including binary, configs, and data are stored on the same disk.
- 4. Mount points are available for the various **Featured Platforms**, as shown opposite.

Alternatively, create and include your own, including subdirectory. Using an individual disk volume for specific featured platforms will help prevent the application from impacting the system and data store.

Easy to expand or migrate data especially when the instance is running on public cloud platforms like AWS or Azure.

🕼 🗯 _sdmin_user_from_172:27.14.181
Mount to File System - sdb
Mount Point
Choose mount points below and fill subdirectory if required.
/opt/splunk
/opt/explore
/opt/tableau
/opt/minio
/opt/parseme
/opt/mnt/

See also the section on Managing Swap space, for guidance on whether this should be enabled.

Note A mix of variant storage types and speed, e.g. SSD, HDD and iSCSI connected disks in one RAID disk or in one logical volume is not recommended. It will slow down disk performance and make it unstable.

## HOME Dashboard

The **Home** dashboard is both the first and default screen following a successful login.

The entire **Gemini Central** experience is organized into different areas accessed from the vertical navigation menu bar on the left of the screen.



HOME	This is the default home page upon login. It provides access to the setup environment and offers the ability to operate as a standalone instance or Management Center.
SPLUNK	On completion of Splunk Enterprise ' <b>Activation</b> ' on the instance, this area will offer configuration parameters for the Splunk environment.
LOG	Provides configuration for Gemini Log Receiver (Syslog-NG server)
NODE	Provides configuration settings for network, identity, and instance preferences.
CLUSTER	Allows for the management of instances as part of a multi-node environment.
LICENSE	Allows for the centralized management of Manage licenses.
EXPLORE	On completion of an ' <b>Activation</b> ' of Explore on the instance, our intuitive <b>Gemini Explore</b> investigation product will be made available.
TABLEAU	On completion of an ' <b>Activation</b> ' of Tableau on the instance, <b>Tableau</b> server is made available for all your business analysis purposes.
MINIO	On completion of an ' <b>Activation</b> ' of MinIO, this instance can be used as part of a MinIO SmartStore S3 compatible cluster.
SETTINGS	This section provides configuration settings for Manage, such as; system update, authentication, security settings, and backup/restore.

## Featured Platform

**Featured platforms** consist of processing platforms available for activation on each instance. Select the '**Activate**' button for easy deployment of a **feature platform** with just a few clicks of the mouse.

C3			🟓 admin
номе	Welcome to Gemini Manage		
> SPLUNK	Use the navigation bar on the left to monitor and manage this Gemini Manage and data platforms alrea below.	dy installed. You may also deploy additional platforms and applications shown below in the Integration C	nter
	Featured Platforms		
		splunk>	‡‡‡ + a b   e a u
	Product: Gemini Explore Status: Not Installed	Product: Splunk Enterprise Status: Not Installed	Product: Tableau Server Status: Not Installed
	Gemini Explore enables you to diagnose problems and uncover insights visually. You may define the understanding of your data of the relationships between them, and then uncover the complex scenarios or discover the hidden stories in a visual way. You can explore the data across data silos and visualize the relationships.	Splark Enterprise makes It simple to collect, analyze and act upon the untapped value of the big data generated by your technology infrastructure, security systems and business applications — giving you the insights to drive operational performance and business results.	Governed self-service analytics at scale with Tableau Server. Share your data and dashboards to multiply your impact. Whether you keep your Server deployment on prem or deploy to the public cloud you can keep the management of your server in your hands.
	ACTIVATE	CONFIGURE	ACTIVATE
SETTINGS	MINIO		
	Product: MinIO Object Storage Status: Not Installed		
	MinIO is a high performance, distributed object storage system. It is software-defined and S3 compatible.		
	ACTIVATE		

Please note that each platform will consume resources. Installing more than one platform on a Gemini instance will naturally result in competition for available resources.

Ensure your instance meets the hardware specifications suited to the workload required by each platform. Please consult with **Gemini Support** (support@geminidata.com) on sizing considerations.

## **Integration Center**

The **Integration Center** contains a repository of applications and apps that provide insight tools, management tools, and connectivity options to sources of data.

Some apps will mirror those provided from other platform ecosystems such as Splunkbase, whilst others are specific to Gemini. Regardless of origin, all apps are fully supported by Gemini Data.

All (24)     Gemini Data (9)	Add-on for Gemini Enterprise: Manager Health Author: Gemini Data	Gemini Enterprise: Investigator Data Connector Author: Gemini Data	Gemini Alert Manager
/E Splunk (22) Cloudera (1) Hadoop (1)	The Health App for Splunk monitors the system state of all Gemini Enterprise: Manager units in a deployment to predict Hardware failures or Resource shortage hefore an extense occurs.	Connect data from Splunk, AppDynamics Saas or on-prem, Active Directory, HP ArcSight and more with Gemini Enterprise: Investigator.	Extended Splunk Alert Manager with advanced reporting on alerts, workflows (modify assignee, status, severity) and auto-resolve features.
Hdfs (1)	INSTALL	INSTALL	INSTALL
UPLOAD	Syslog Receiver for HDFS	Gemini Data Quality	Gemini Enterprise: Investigator
	Author: Gemini Data	Author: Gemini Data	Author: Gemini Data
vse	Syslog Receiver for HDFS use Flume to retrieve Syslog data stream and store them as files in HDFS.	Gemini Data Quality App for Splunk helps you to analyze the quality of data indexed in Splunk. The App verifies Field coverage and Splunk CIM compliancy.	The Gemini Enterprise: Investigator Looku for Splunk App enables a Workflow Action to lookup and investigate any value from extracted fields in Gemini Enterprise: Investigate
) NK	INSTALL	INSTALL	INSTALL
4	Gemini KV Store Tools	Gemini Enterprise: Manager Health	Add-on for Gemini Alert Manager
VGS	Author: Gemini Data	Author: Gemini Data	Author: Gemini Data
	The Gemini KV Store Tools for Splunk App helps to backup and restore Splunk collections.	The Health App for Splunk monitors the system state of all Gemini Enterprise: Manager units in a deployment to predict Hardware failures or Resource shortage baffere an enterprise.	Add-on for Gemini Alert Manager is required by the Gemini Alert Manager App and provides Index and Search Time parameters for the data generated by the Ann
	INSTALL	INSTALL	INSTALL

Each solution or application is represented by a descriptive card that allows for easy installation, configuration or removal. Use the **vertical ellipsis** configuration menu for specific screens pertaining to each application.

## Splunk Installation

The following process ensures the proper installation and configuration of Splunk inside Gemini Central.

Note The instance does not ship with the Splunk binaries. Download the required version from the Splunk website. You will need a Splunk account to achieve this.

Before proceeding, ensure that you have the following prerequisites:

- An active Splunk account to access Splunk installation binaries.
- A downloaded Splunk Enterprise 64-bit Linux binary (.tgz)
- Splunk Enterprise Licence (Note, this can be added later)

If you do not have a Splunk account or have not downloaded the latest installation file, instructions and links are provided within the **Splunk / Daemon / Install Splunk Enterprise** dashboard within the Management Center, following **Activation**.

Note Apple/Safari users, you will want to ensure you have disabled 'Open Safe Files after downloading' to retain the .tgz extension.

## Activate Splunk

From the **Gemini Central Home** dashboard, enable the **Splunk** menu by selecting the **'Activate**' button located within the **Splunk Enterprise** panel.

# Splunk> Status: Not Installed Source Splunk Enterprise Substance Status: Not Installed Substance Splunk Enterprise Substance Splunk Ente

## Splunk Clustered Environment Installation

A '**Splunk Environment**' can contain **Indexer Clusters** and **Search Head Clusters** created in one or more locations, together with one or more Splunk standalone instances.

If you require one or more Splunk environments to be created from existing Gemini instances, or if you want to add more instances to grow your existing Splunk environment, use the **Splunk Environments** dashboard at the Gemini **Management Center** node.

If you need to interact with **Splunk** on any Gemini Central instance, it will first need to be 'Activated'.

**Note:** The Management Center node does not have to have Splunk installed. It is simply used as a control node for your Splunk instances.

From the **HOME** page of the **Gemini web interface**, locate the **Splunk** panel, and from this select the **'Activate**' button. This will create a **'Splunk icon**' at the vertical menu bar if it does not already exist.

To manage existing Splunk instances, login to the dedicated Gemini **Management Center** and open the **Splunk Environments** dashboard using the **Splunk icon**.

To create a new **Splunk Environment**, refer to the **Bulk Provisioning** process.

Nodes already created using the **Bulk Provisioning** process should now be visible in the **'Unassigned Nodes**' panel (see below).

SPLUNK > Splunk Environments										
Environments     Clusters     Nodes	Search for name,	Search for name, IP Q					+ Add Node			
			No Environments							
Unassigned Nodes (7)	IP	Туре	Splunk Software	Site	Deployment Type	Status				
gemini-005	10.1.5.45	Software Appliance	Not Installed	-		0	:			
gemini-007	10.1.5.47	Software Appliance	Not Installed	-		0	:			
gemini-004	10.1.5.44	Software Appliance	Not Installed	-		0	:			
gemini-003	10.1.5.43	Software Appliance	Not Installed			0	:			
gemini-006	10.1.5.46	Software Appliance	Not Installed	-		$\checkmark$	:			

If there are missing nodes following the Bulk Provisioning process, or if you want to bring in remote Splunk clusters to a Splunk Environment, these will need to be added as '**Unassigned Nodes**' before they can be re-assigned to a Splunk Environment.

Details on adding **Unassigned Nodes** as either standalone instances or complete Splunk Clusters, can be obtained from the '**Adding a Node**' section located in the <u>Splunk Environments</u> section of this Administration Guide.

#### **Building the Splunk Environment**

When **Unassigned Nodes** have been made available and a **Splunk Environment** already exists, simply add them to your existing environment, using the '**Add to Environment**' button at the bottom of the screen.

Alternatively, if this is a new installation, or if for some reason you require a new **Splunk Environment**, create a new Splunk Environment using the '**+ Build Environment**' button (top-right of the screen). This will reveal a four-step wizard that enables the capture of the required detail in order to build the desired Splunk configuration.



A typical Splunk configuration process includes the following stages;

- **Step 1:** Creating or specifying a Splunk Environment name, cluster arrangement, and Splunk binary version to be installed
- Step 2: Creating a Splunk cluster for the environment.
- **Step 3:** Organize nodes into a cluster.
- **Step 4:** Specify the site name for the cluster.

Repeat the above steps to create additional Splunk Environments or Clusters.

Note If required, refer to Splunk documentation architecture Best Practices to understand more about how clustering works in Splunk.

#### Step 1: Creating the Splunk Environment

In this step there are several attributes to be specified:

• Deployment Type

Select '**Deploy Multi-Use Environment**' for a traditional Splunk Indexer and Search Head Cluster configuration.

Select '**Deploy Independent Stream Forwarders**' to create a Splunk Stream forwarder. (Special use-case only).

#### • Environment Name

Create a suitable name for your Splunk Environment. This is simply a label and can therefore include spaces etc.

• Available Sites

Traditionally, Splunk clustering is of the single-site or multi-site variety, however, with **Gemini Central** we always begin by creating a multi-site cluster arrangement. This has many advantages for future scaling or data migration and will still enable you to work in a single-site arrangement if required.

For this reason, use the value of '**site1**' here to represent a '**single-site**' cluster arrangement. For '**multi-site**' cluster arrangements, additional site names can be added here using a comma as a delimiter, ie. site1,site2, etc

For further information regarding Splunk clustering, please refer to Splunk documentation.

#### • Splunk Software

Select the version of Splunk required in this environment. Ideally, there should be only one Splunk version used across the entire Environment.

Use the 'Choose the file' upload link provided to upload a new Splunk binary.

Deployment Type Choose to deploy Independent Steam Forwarders only or Multi-use Environment	Deploy Multi-Use Environment This environment will be comprised of some combinations of Search Head Clusters, Indexer Clusters, and/or standalone instances.			
	Deploy Independent Stream Forwarders This environment will only be comprised of Independent Stream Forwarders.			
Environment Name Specify a name to identify your Environment.	Gemini Cluster - Appliances			
Available Sites Add a comma-separated list of physical or logical locations. Assigning nodes to sites will be done at a later step.	she1 x add a tag acceptable siter, site, s			
Splunk Software Select or upload the desired Splunk software to be used in this process.	Splunk Enterprise v7.3.1 🗸			
	Drop package here or click to choose the file from your computer			

Select the 'Organize Cluster' button at the bottom of the screen to reveal the following:

Creat Envir	onment	2 Organize Clusters	3 Organize Nodes				
Gemini Cluster - Appliances       Splunk Enterprise v7.3.1   Ste1							
<b>Organize Clusters</b> Add as many clusters as neede for this environment. Assigning nodes to clusters will be done in a later step.	+ New C	Cluster					

#### Step 2: Create Splunk Clusters

Select the '**+ New Cluste**r' icon to create a new Splunk Cluster. Note that it is required that you create an **Indexer Cluster** before moving on to add a **Search Head Cluster**.

#### **Creating an Indexer Cluster**

Use a suitable '**Name**' for the new **Indexer Cluster** 

Ensure that the '**Type**' is set to '**Indexer**'

Create a new 'Splunk secret key' that will be used to authenticate the cluster members.

Select the 'Organize Nodes' button to progress in creating the Indexer Cluster
This Environment	Appliance Trainii Splunk Enterpris	ig Environment le v7.3.3 ♀ site1	
Organize Clusters Add as many clusters as neede for this environment. Assigning nodes to clusters will be done in a later step.	Name Type	gemini-cluster-idx01	8
	Splunk Secret • New C	newSecretKey	

#### **Creating a Search Head Cluster**

A Search Head Cluster can only be created once an Indexer Cluster has been provisioned. The following will also be required in order to complete this operation;

- The Cluster Master IP address
- The Indexer Cluster secret key

Use a suitable 'Name' for the new Search Head Cluster.

Ensure that the 'Type' is set to 'Search Head'

Enter a **secret key** for the Search head Cluster in the **Splunk Secret** box used for authenticating Search Heads to their cluster. Best practice dictates that this should be different from the secret key used for the Indexer Cluster.

Enter the Cluster Master IP address in the Indexer Master URI box.

Enter the **Indexer Cluster** secret key in the **Indexer Secret**: box. This is visible in its encrypted form within the **Splunk Secret** entry for the **Indexer Cluster**. Do not be tempted to copy and paste this into the Indexer Secret box. Always use the original secret key assigned to the Indexer Cluster prior to its encryption.

Note Creation of a **Search Head Cluster** will require identification of a valid **Cluster Master**. If you are building a brand new Splunk environment, an **Indexer Cluster** will need to be provisioned prior to creating a **Search Head Cluster**.

This Environment	Appliance Trainin Site1	ng Cluster	
Organize Clusters	Name	gemini-cluster-idx-01	
Assigning nodes to clusters will be done in a later step.	Туре	Indexer	~
	Splunk Secret	RENTWIpcWFBZSREOCgULBQI=	
	Name	aemini-cluster-sh-01	
	Туре	Search Head	~
	Splunk Secret	shclustersecret	
	Indexer Master URI	10.1.5.41	
	Indexer Secret	indexerclustersecret	

# Note Secret keys for both the Indexer and the Search Head Clusters should be recorded and held in a secure place. These are fundamental to the successful completion of any future cluster related function.

Select the 'Organize Nodes' button to progress in creating a Search Head Cluster.

#### Step 3: Organize the Nodes

From the 'Available Nodes' section, select nodes to create your Splunk cluster.

For an Indexer Cluster ensure that you include a Cluster Master(Master Node).

For a Search Head Cluster ensure that you include a Deployer.

If this is to be the first Indexer Cluster created in the Management Center, refer to the '**Initial Splunk Environment**' section below.

Use the graphical interface to select the required number of nodes. There are two ways of achieving this as shown below.

• Select multiple nodes and assign them to the appropriate cluster using the '+ Add To Cluster' icon

		+ Add To Cluster + Assig	n Standalone Node
		Add to Indexer Clusters	
Name	IP Addres	gemini-app-idx-cluster1	
🗸 gemini-002	10.1.5.42	gemini-app-shc-cluster1	:
gemini-005	10.1.5.45	Add to Search Head Clusters	:
gemini-007	10.1.5.47		:
🥑 gemini-001	10.1.5.41		:
gemini-004	10.1.5.44		:
🥑 gemini-003	10.1.5.43		:
gemini-006	10.1.5.46		:

• Or select an individual node and assign it to a relevant cluster using the vertical ellipsis icon to the right.

	•	Add To Cluster	+ Assign Standalone Node
Name	IP Address	Model	Туре
gemini-002	10.1.5.42		:
gemini-005	10.1.5.45		:
gemini-007	10.1.5.47		:
gemini-001	10.1.5.41		:
🥑 gemini-004	10.1.5.44		÷
gemini-003	10.1.5.43		Add to Indexer Clusters
gemini-006	10.1.5.46		Add to Search Head Clusters

Splunk requirements will be enforced and if the requested configuration is unsuitable a warning will be shown in the status field.

Refer to the '**Your Clusters**' panel to confirm your selections and specify which nodes should become the **Cluster Master** or **Deployer** using the vertical ellipsis icon.

Your Clusters	Name	Address	Model	Туре	Status		
Review the configuration and change the type if needed	gemini-app-idx-cluster1			Indexer			
	gemini-001	10.1.5.41		Master No	de 🥑	:	
	gemini-002	10.1.5.42		Indexer	0	÷	
	gemini-003	10.1.5.43 Index		Indexer	Set as Master Node		
	gemini-app-shc-cluster1			Indexer	Remove from Cluster		
	gemini-004	10.1.5.44		Master No	de 🕑	:	
	gemini-005	10.1.5.45		Indexer	0	:	
	gemini-007	10.1.5.47		Indexer	0	:	
	gemini-006	10.1.5.46		Indexer	0	:	

When all additions have been made, select the 'Locate Nodes' button to progress

#### Step 4: Locate Nodes

In this step, we specify the node location. This is especially important for a multi-site Cluster environment.

For a single-site operation, all nodes should be assigned '**site1**'. This is the first site name used as a default by Splunk.

Alternatively, if you are creating a multi-site environment, assign nodes to site1 or site2 accordingly.

Highlight one or more nodes and use the '**+ Set Site**' button to assign them to a site from the drop-down list. Typically this will just have the '**site1**' value.

Locate Nodes All Nodes have been automatically located to the first site. Adjust the local assignment as needed.						🔸 Set Site
	V Name	IP Address	Model	Туре	Site	
	gemini-app-idx-cluster1			Indexer		
	- 🔽 gemini-001	10.1.5.41		Master Node	♥ site1	:
	- 🗸 gemini-002	10.1.5.42		Indexer	♥ site1	:
	- 🗸 gemini-003	10.1.5.43		Indexer	♥ site1	:
	gemini-app-shc-cluster1			Search Head		
	- 🔽 gemini-004	10.1.5.44		Deployer	♥ site1	÷
	- 🗸 gemini-005	10.1.5.45		Search Head	♥ site1	:
	- 🗸 gemini-007	10.1.5.47		Search Head	Site1	:
	- 🔽 gemini-006	10.1.5.46		Search Head	Site1	÷

Select the 'Deploy' button to continue with the Splunk environment deployment.

At this point in time, the Splunk Cluster will be built. This will usually take a few minutes to complete but will depend on the complexity and number of Nodes involved.

#### **Initial Splunk Environment**

If this is your first installation within the Management Center and you have successfully built an **Indexer Cluster**, you will now have the required **Cluster Master** references that can be used to build a subsequent **Search Head Cluster**.

Return to the **Splunk Environments** Dashboard using the **Splunk Icon** on the Vertical Menu Bar of the Home page.

The **Cluster Master** IP address will be required to set up the **Search Head Cluster**. In order to discover the assigned IP/DNS name of the Cluster Master, select the **Node / Name** option from the vertical menu.

Return to the **Splunk Environments** dashboard and choose the appropriate number of instances from the '**Unassigned Nodes**' panel to form a **Search Head Cluster** (minimum of 4), then select the '**Create New Cluster**' button to reveal the following:

Environment Name		
Specify a name to identify your Environment.	Appliance Training Cluster	~
Available Sites		
Add a comma-separated list of physical or logical locations. Assigning nodes to sites will be done at a later	site1 x	
step.	acceptable sites: site1, site2,, site63	

At **Step 1** of the Wizard, select the appropriate Splunk **Environment Name** for which you require a Search Head Cluster, and add the **site** detail accordingly. This will usually consist of '**site1**', unless you are building a multi-site cluster environment, in which case you will need to add 'site2', etc.

Select the 'Organize Cluster' button when done.

At **Step 2**, select the '**+ New Cluster**' button to create a new Cluster separate to the existing Indexer Cluster

Enter an appropriate name for your Search Head Cluster.

Change the 'Type' to Search Head.

Enter a **secret key** used for authenticating the Search Heads to their cluster

Enter the IP address of the Cluster Master node.

Enter the **Indexer Secret** from the **Indexer Cluster**. Ensure that you use the original secret key here and not the encrypted value visible on this screen.

Select the 'Organize Nodes' button on completion.

This Environment	Appliance Traini Site1	ng Cluster	
Organize Clusters Add as many clusters as neede for this environment. Assigning nodes to clusters will be done in a later step.	Name Type	gemini-cluster-idx-01	
	Splunk Secret Name	RENTWIpcWFBZSREOCgULBQI=	
	Type Splunk Secret	Search Head ~	
	Indexer Master URI Indexer Secret	10.1.5.41 indexerclustersecret	
	🕂 New C	luster	

At **Step 3**, you will be presented with the following screen. Select the nodes required from the **'Available Nodes**' presented, and use the **'+ Add To Cluster**' button to assign them to the newly created **Search Head Cluster** listed.

Available Nodes Select unassigned nodes and assign them with the			<ul> <li>Add To Cluster</li> </ul>	
designated roles	V Name	IP Addres	Add to Indexer Clusters	
			gemini-cluster-idx-01	
	gemini-816fdc	10.1.5.46	Add to Search Head	:
	🗸 gemini-beba10	10.1.5.47	gemini-cluster-shc-01	:
	gemini-acbab2	10.1.5.44		:
	gemini-22f35f	10.1.5.45		:

The '**Your Clusters'** panel below allows you to choose which node you want to assign as the **Deployer** instance and confirms the Clusters now present.

Your Clusters	Name	Address Model	Type S	tatus
Review the configuration and change the type if needed	gemini-cluster-idx-01		Indexer	<b>9</b>
	gemini-002	10.1.5.42	Cluster Master	9
	gemini-003	10.1.5.43	Cluster Peer	9
	gemini-001	10.1.5.41	Cluster Peer	9
	gemini-cluster-shc-01		Search Head	
	gemini-acbab2	10.1.5.44	Deployer	
	gemini-816fdc	10.1.5.46	Search Head	2 <u>;</u>
	gemini-beba10	10.1.5.47	Search Hea, Set as D	eployer
	gemini-22f35f	10.1.5.45	Search Hea	from Cluster

At **Step 4**, select the '**Locate Nodes**' button to assign this cluster to a '**site**'. Highlight instances in the cluster, as shown below, and select the '**+ Set Site**' button to select the site number. This will generally be '**site1**' in a single site cluster arrangement. This may change to 'site2' or 'site3', etc, if you are using a multi-site cluster arrangement.

Finally, select the '**Deploy**' button to create this Search Head Cluster using the information provided.

Locate Nodes All Nodes have been automatically located to the first site. Adjust the local assignment as needed						📀 Set Site
and August the food usaginnent us needed.						site1
	Name	IP Address Mo	odel	Туре	Site	
	gemini-cluster-idx-01			Indexer		
	- gemini-002	10.1.5.42		Cluster Master	♀ site1	
	- gemini-003	10.1.5.43		Cluster Peer	♀ site1	
	- gemini-001	10.1.5.41		Cluster Peer	♀ site1	
	gemini-cluster-shc-01			Search Head		
	- 🔽 gemini-acbab2	10.1.5.44		Deployer	Site1	:
	- 🔽 gemini-816fdc	10.1.5.46		Search Head	Site1	:
	- 🔽 gemini-beba10	10.1.5.47		Search Head	♀ site1	:
	- 🔽 gemini-22f35f	10.1.5.45		Search Head	♀ site1	:

# Verification of the Splunk Environment

Select **Splunk / Environments** from the vertical menu-bar at any time to obtain an overview.

HOME	Splunk Manager	SPLUNK > Splunk Environments					
		🗹 Environments 🔽 Clusters 🔽 Node	s Search for name, IP			Q	
	Web Interface	Name	Туре	Site	Version	Contains	
		Appliance Splunk Cluster				2 Clusters	
LICENSE	Apps Splunk Diag	gemini-app-idx-cluster1	Indexer			3 Nodes	
>		gemini-001	Cluster Master	• site1	Splunk Enterprise 7.3.1		
SPLUNK		gemini-003	Cluster Peer	9 site1	Splunk Enterprise 7.3.1		
SETTINGS	Command	gemini-002	Cluster Peer	♥ site1	Splunk Enterprise 7.3.1		
		gemini-app-shc-cluster1	Search Head			4 Nodes	
		gemini-004	SHC Deployer	♥ site1	Splunk Enterprise 7.3.1		
		gemini-005	SHC Member	<b>9</b> site1	Splunk Enterprise 7.3.1		
		gemini-007	SHC Member	• site1	Splunk Enterprise 7.3.1		
		gemini-006	SHC Member	9 site1	Splunk Enterprise 7.3.1		

Should you see anything other than the expected output here, you may need to destroy the cluster and re-attempt addition. Verify that you have entered the correct site references, which should all be set to '**site1**' if there is to be only one site present. Also ensure that you have entered the correct IP address for the Cluster Master, and secret key for the Indexer Cluster when creating a Search Head Cluster.

# Post Splunk Cluster Deployment Features and Tasks

#### **Splunk Activation**

If the **Bulk Provisioning** feature of Gemini Central has been used to deploy Splunk Clusters, it is still required to '**Activate**' Splunk on each Gemini Instance in order to access Splunk control and management features via the Gemini web interface. This action does not affect the local Splunk installation in any way, it simply grants access via the Gemini web interface.

It is required to '**Activate**' Splunk on each Gemini instance using the button located on the **Home** dashboard. The Splunk Menu icon will then appear in the Vertical menu bar.

## Splunk Web Port (8000)

Any instance other than a Search Head or Cluster Master will have its **splunk-web** port disabled by default, meaning that you will not be able to access the Splunk web interface (8000).

If you wish to enable the web port select **Splunk / Web Interface** from the menu bar and ensure that **Splunk Web Control** is enabled. Use the **Open Splunk Web** heading to open Splunk in a new tab.

Note This is not recommended for indexers! The instance will need to be restarted - do not restart an individual Indexer that is participating in an Indexer Cluster

# Splunk Receiver Port (9997)

**Important:** Any instance that has been designated a **Splunk Indexer** will not have a default **Receiver Port** setting of 9997. This means that the Indexers will not be able to receive data. Customers must choose a receiver Port value and apply this to all Splunk Indexers. This can be achieved from an **inputs.conf** file setting applied via the **Cluster Master** or Splunk **Deployment Server**.

# Splunk Boot-Start

Splunk is installed with the '**boot-start**' feature enabled, using **systemd** control. This preferred service control method will be used unless Splunk has already been installed (remote agent option) and is using the older **initd** method of control, in which case this will be left in place.

## Splunk Workload Management features

Splunk's **Workload Management** feature can be used if desired with Splunk on Gemini Central instances, providing the 'systemd' control is in place (see above).

#### Splunk admin password

**Important:** When Splunk is deployed using **Bulk Provisioning**, the default admin password is automatically changed from '**changeme**' to '**gemini123**'. This important action allows for better feature control via the management port (8089). Change this password to conform to your own password if required, this can be done using the **Splunk / Daemon / Advanced Configurations** dashboard.

#### SSL Passwords

**Important:** OS User accounts such as **sbox** and **splunk** have a default expiry of 60 days on their accounts. If you have changed the SSH passwords from their defaults, and you wish to freeze them for the future, navigate to the **Settings / Password Policy** dashboard and remove the checkmark from the Password Expiration box. Alternatively, adjust the settings at this dashboard to meet your own company Password Policy.

## Heartbeat monitoring feature

Gemini Central contains the ability to monitor and advise on Splunk instances. This feature can be found on the **Splunk Environments** dashboard. The heartbeat period is 60 secs, and if Splunk is detected as unavailable on an instance, the **heartbeat icon** will turn from green to red.

#### **Resource activity**

Understanding resource utilization such as disk space and CPU usage can be monitored in real-time from the **Cluster / Manage Nodes** dashboard in Gemini Central.

## Using the Splunk Web interface

Verify the formation of the Splunk Environment using Splunk's own **Indexer Clustering** dashboard located on the **Cluster Master** instance.

In order to check the status of your **Splunk** environment, you will first need to access the **Cluster Master** Gemini instance.

Use the following procedure to access the **Cluster Master** web interface, and indeed any other Splunk Node that you wish to gain web access.

- 1. Note the **Node** name that is associated with the '**Cluster Master**' from the **Splunk Environments** screen.
- 2. Select Node / Name from the vertical menu-bar and locate its IP address

3. Use a browser to access the Splunk UI directly, using http://<CM\_address>:8000

Alternatively, login to the **Gemini instance** at https://<CM\_address> using the 'admin' password, and select **Splunk / Web Interface** from the menu-bar to '**Open Splunk Web**'.

1. Login to Splunk at its web interface, and locate the **Indexer Clustering** dashboard from the **Settings** menu.

This should show the status of both the Indexer and Search Head Cluster. Below is an example of the result you can expect. If anything other than green checkmarks, you may need to investigate further.

Please feel free to contact <u>support@geminidata.com</u> for any assistance with your Splunk Environment.

Indexer Clustering: Master N	Node		Ed	it  More Info Documentation 12
<ul> <li>All Data is Searc</li> </ul>	hable	<ul> <li>Search Factor is Met</li> </ul>	✓ Replica	ition Factor is Met
<b>2</b> searchab	e <b>O</b> not searchable Peers		3 searchable 0 not search Indexes	able
Peers (2) Indexes (3) Search Heads (4)				
filter Q 10 p	er page 🔻			
i Peer Name \$	Site ‡	Fully Searchable \$	Status ¢	Buckets ¢ 7
> gemini-001	site1	✓ Yes	Up	6504
> gemini-003	site1	✓ Yes	Up	6504

## Adding more Nodes

If you need to add an **Unassigned Node** to either an existing Indexer or Search Head Cluster, refer to the <u>Add to cluster</u> section

If you need to add another instance to the Management Center as an Unassigned Node resource, refer to the <u>Adding a Node</u> section.

#### Adding a Splunk License Manager

Splunk requires an Enterprise License to be installed and shared among the Indexer and Search head peers. Splunk uses a Licence Manage mechanism to achieve this. For details on how to set this up in a Gemini Central environment, please refer to the <u>Gemini Central - Create a Splunk License Server</u> document

#### Adding a Splunk Monitoring Console

The **Splunk Monitoring Console** is an invaluable tool for maintaining your Splunk Environment and assisting in troubleshooting, however, it is not enabled by default and we strongly recommend that this app is enabled on one of your Gemini instances. We would recommend the Gemini **Management Center** node, or alternatively, if you have less than 20 Instances, the **Cluster Master** instance would be an ideal choice. For larger sites, we would recommend either dedicating a specific stand-alone search head or to use another low usage instance that is perhaps running as a Splunk License Master or Deployment Server.

For details on how to set this up in a Gemini Central environment, please refer to the <u>Gemini Central</u> - <u>Enable a Splunk Monitoring Console</u> document.

# Standalone Splunk Installation

If you want to use the instance as a standalone Splunk instance, you will first need to '**Activate**' the Splunk panel from the **Home** dashboard, and then navigate to the **Splunk / Daemon** dashboard.

From the '**Upload Splunk Tar File**' panel, select the '**Upload & Install**' button to begin the upload process.

C3	Splunk Manager	Install Splunk Enterprise	
HOME	Daemon Web Interface	Get Splunk Please go to splunk.com and if you don't have one, register for an account. This will allow you to download the Splunk Enterprise software.	
NODE		Once you have auccessfully signed in: 1. Go to the Download Splunk Enterprise page 2. Select "Linux" from the fail of options 3. In the power, adject the splunk-****-Linux-v86, 64.tgc option to begin downloading Splunk Enterprise software	
CLUSTER		Upload Splunk Tar File	
LICENSE	Config Editor Versioning Command	Please upload the Splunk Enterprise software to continue.	
SPLUNK	Environments		
SETTINGS			
ACCOUNT		A Splunk Enterprise is not installed yet	×

When the file has finished uploading, its status is displayed in the subpanel. Change the default admin credentials supplied if desired, then select the '**Install**' button and accept the Splunk Software License Agreement.

The Splunk Enterprise software will now be installed on your Gemini instance.

Splunk Manager	Install Splunk Enterprise	Upload and Install			
Environments	Get Splunk	Uploaded Versio	n		
Daemon Web Interface Apps Splunk Diag Onlimizer	Please go to splurik.com and if you don't have one, register for an account. This will allow you to downlos Once you have successfully signed in: 1. Go to the <u>Download Splank Enterprise</u> page 2. Select <b>"Linux"</b> from the list of options 3. In the popup, select the <b>splank-*,**+Linux-x86_64.tg</b> option to begin downloading Splank Enterprise	PLATFORM PRODUCT VERSION BUILD	Linux-x86_64 splunk 7.3.4 13e97039fb65		
Config Editor		Default Admin U	ser		
Versioning Command	Upload Splunk Tar File	Username admin			
Deactivate		Password			
	Please uploa	gernini 23			
	Splunk® is a registered trademark of Splunk Inc. in the United States and other countries. All other brand nar	INSTALL	CANCEL		

On completion of the installation, the **Splunk / Daemon** dashboard is displayed;

НОМЕ	SPLUNK > Daemon
NODE	Splunk Service Control
CLUSTER	🕐 Stop Splunk ( Restart Splunk 🕐 Upgrade Splunk 🚫 Destroy Splunk Instance
LICENSE	SPLUNK HOME/opt/splunkVersionSplunk 7.3.4 (build 13e97039fb65)
> SPLUNK	Boot-Start
SETTINGS	<ul> <li>Enable Splunk Boot-Start</li> <li>Enable BOOT-START in order to start Splunk daemon automatically at boot time.</li> <li>Run Splunk as a systemd service.</li> </ul>
	Run Splunk as a systemd service.

It is highly recommended that the '**Boot-Start**' option is enabled and run as a **systemd** service, as opposed to the older **initd** method of service control.

Ensure that the '**Run Splunk as a systemd service**' checkbox is 'made' prior to switching the **Boot-start** slider to the right to enable (Unless you prefer to use the **initd** service control).

Further options from the **Splunk** menu could be considered at this point including;



**Web Interface** - Turning off the Web port to prevent access.

**Optimizer** - Select a Splunk best practice template from the options given.

**Versioning** - Create an initial Splunk configuration status that could be used for Rollback purposes.

**Config Editor** - The ability to upload, move, modify, copy and extract Splunk configuration files.

**Command** - The ability to run Splunk CLI commands through the web interface.

# Gemini Explore

**Gemini Explore** is an intuitive visual graph-based data exploration tool that works directly on Splunk, CSV or JDBC data sources.

Using this dynamic multi-layer visualization tool, the user is able to drill-down and interact with their data in a whole new way.

Intuitive to use, as it mimics the way our brains 'think'. On discovering something interesting, 'click' to instinctively locate more detail and how it may relate to other datasets.

#### Prerequisites:

- Minimum of 200GB available disk space
- Minimum of 4 CPU cores (8 is recommended)
- Minimum of 16GB available RAM (32GB is recommended)
- Port access required: 80:tcp, 9000:tcp
- Public web access is required to acquire the Explore binary file for installation
- A valid Gemini Central Trial or Enterprise license

## Activating Gemini Central

If you are interested in using this product, select the '**Activate**' button from the Featured Platforms panel of the **HOME** dashboard associated with Gemini Explore.

Featured Platforms		
CHMINI	splunk>	<sup>+</sup> <sup>+</sup> ++++++++++++++++++++++++++++++++
Product: Gemini Explore Status: Not Install	Product: Splunk Enterprise Status: Splunk 7.3.4 (build 13e97039fb65)	Product: Tableau Server Status: Not Install
Gemini Explore enables you to diagnose problems and uncover insights visually. You may define the understanding of your data and the relationships between them, and then uncover the complex scenarios or discover the hidden stories in a visual way. You can explore the data across data slios and visualize the relationships.	Splunk Enterprise makes it simple to collect, analyze and act upon the untapped value of the big data generated by your technology infrastructure, security systems and business applications-qiving you the insights to drive operational performance and business results.	Governed self-service analytics at scale with Tableau Server. Share your data and dashboards to multiply your impact. Whether you keep your server deployment on-prem or deploy to the public cloud you can keep the management of your server in your hands.
ACTIVATE	ACTIVATE	ACTIVATE

The **Explore** feature is currently available to include in Gemini Central as a '**Beta Trial**' option, available on request from **Gemini Data**(<u>support@geminidata.com</u>), in the form of an **explore-x-x.pack** install file.

Once this **Explore** pack has been received, use the '**Upload**' facility to add **Explore** to the Gemini Central **HOME** dashboard.

Ins	tall Gemini Explore
	Upload Gemini Explore install pack
	Click here to choose the tarball
	Upicad

At the install prompt, use the '**Install**' button to proceed.

stall Gemini Explore		
Install Components		
Component	Installed	Running
frontend		
router		
frontend-ui		
mongodb		
parser		
neo4j		
graphapi		

The installation process collects the required components from a secure internet location and will take several minutes to complete. On completion, the **Explore Components** resource dashboard will be fully populated. This dashboard can be opened at any time, using the **Explore** icon on the vertical menu bar, to view resources currently in use.

C3										3
HOME	Gemini Explore									
	🕒 Stop   🌐 C	pen Gemini Explore	🔀 Uninstall							
Æ	Explore Com	onents								
CLUSTER	0i <sup>34</sup> i	Status	CBU	Memory			Network		I/O	
Ŕ	Service The	Status	CPU	Used (MB)	Limit (MB)	Percent	Send (KB)	Receive (KB)	Read (KB)	Write (KB)
EXPLORE	frontend	0	0%	198.4	30156.8	0%	35020.8	26316.8	0	0
LICENSE	frontend-ui	<b></b>	0%	19.32	30156.8	0%	38.9	705	0	0
>	mongodb	0	0%	32.78	30156.8	0%	26112	34816	0	0
SPLUNK	parser	<b></b>	0%	56.86	30156.8	0%	20275.2	8683.52	0	0
++++ ++++ TABLEAU	redis	<b></b>	0%	1.762	30156.8	0%	379	390	0	0
<b>*</b>	neo4j	<b></b>	0%	750.1	30156.8	0%	1730.56	1720.32	0	0
SETTINGS	router	<b></b>	0%	1.562	30156.8	0%	17408	18432	0	0
	graphapi	<b></b>	0%	385	30156.8	0%	21.8	20.9	0	0
	websocket-manager	0	0%	20.64	30156.8	0%	204	191	0	0

Use the '**Open Gemini Explore**' button to open the **Explore** web interface in a new browser tab.

**Note:** If you receive a '**400 Bad Reques**t' message, ensure you use the **https://** prefix and continue on to accept the inevitable certificate warning.



Login using the default credentials: Username: init@geminidata.com Password: changeme

This will open the **Explore** canvas, and give access to the **Exploration** menu.



Select the **Data Modeling** menu option to begin your journey with exploring data using this exciting technology.

CI	<ul> <li>Data Modeling -</li> </ul>					
	_					
	Welcor Use this interface t	ne!	a data source, de	sign and mo	dify models, creat	e new graphs!

## Licensing Gemini Central (Beta Trial)

In order to use **Gemini Explore** as a fully functioning 'Beta trial' within Gemini Central 2.8, it needs to connect to a valid Manage license. This can be provided from the local Manage instance running Gemini Explore, or from an optional external Manage instance that is running an Enterprise license.

From the **Gemini Central** web interface, navigate to **License / License Status** and verify that either the **Trial** license is in place, or a License Server connected and is still within its expiry date.

Navigate to **License / License Server**, and select the '**Yes**' tab to '**Allow Remote Access**' Add an asterix (\*) in the box marked '**White List**', and select the '**Update**' button (see below)

License	Server Settings	
Allow Remote Ad Allows another ap	ccess pliance to use this appliance as a license server. Yes	
Token String The security token cf827cf3	another appliance needs to enter to access this license server.	
White List You could use wild	dcard * as any character for remote IP address, one line for one rule.	
UPDATE		
Notes	<ol> <li>Gemini Explore must detect a Trial license will expire after 30</li> <li>For help &amp; guidance on this is</li> </ol>	a valid <b>Trial</b> or <b>Enterprise License</b> . The ) days. sue, contact <u>support@geminidata.com</u>

## Integrating Inspect for Splunk Admin

As an introduction to the **Explore** experience and to what this product can offer, we have embedded our **Inspect for Splunk Admin** app for your convenience. This will interrogate any Splunk server running a configured Splunk **Monitoring Console**, and allow you to view details of the Splunk infrastructure, including relationships between Splunk instances and their components.

We would always recommend that a **Monitoring Console** instance is created as part of a Splunk deployment. Within a Gemini **Splunk Environment**, we would recommend use of the **Cluster Master** node as an appropriate choice for the Monitoring Console location.

Once a Monitoring Console source has been established, select the '**Admin**' dashboard from the **Data Modeling** menu and from here select the '**Apps**' sub-menu.



Select the 'Configure' button to reveal the following Monitoring Console setup screen;

Setup	
Scheme *	
Https	•
Host *	
10.1.5.193	
Port *	
8089	
Username *	
admin	
Password *	
Submit	

Leave the **Scheme** setting at the default '**Https**'

The **Host** field represents the Splunk instance operating as the Monitoring Console. Enter an IP address or FQDN of such an instance.

The **Port** field represents the Splunk management port operating at the Monitoring Console instance. This will usually be the default port of 8089.

Use an admin user's credentials for the **Username** and **Password**.

Select the '**Submit**' button on completion.

Return to the **Admin / Apps** dashboard at any to disable **Inspect for Splunk Admin** or check on its data Flow status. This app will take several minutes before anything becomes visible at the Exploration canvas, or the 'completed' Data Flows on the above App indicator starts to increase from zero. This is perfectly normal. When all of the Data Flows will have completed(37), the Exploration canvas can be used.

Open the canvas from the **Exploration** menu, the Inspect for Splunk Admin node categories will be visible to the left of the canvas revealing your nominated Splunk environment.



Use the '+' icon or the 'Show' entry box to add elements to the canvas.

**Right-click** elements to '**Insert Neighbors**' or '**Insert Relationships**', or **double-click** to explore all the connections automatically.

For more information on getting started with **Gemini Explore**, please refer to the <u>Gemini Explore</u> - <u>User Guide</u>

For more information on **Inspect for Splunk Admin**, please refer to the <u>Inspect for Splunk Admin</u> <u>App- Quick Start Guide</u> Note also, that from the **Exploration** menu, you can select the **Data Modelling** dashboard to reveal that **Inspect for Splunk Admin** has added a new **Source** to Explore that replicates Splunk connection detail supplied in the setup screen.

Sources			Add new
Name	Туре	Created At	
	splunk	2020-08-05T18:05:16.000Z	

# Tableau Server

We have offered the ability to run **Tableau Server** as a featured product within Gemini Central. The latest Tableau binary file can be uploaded and integrated within our web interface. If you already have a Tableau license, this may be added at the License prompt.

**Prerequisites:** 

- Minimum of 15GB available disk space (50GB would be a typical working amount)
- Minimum of 4 CPU cores (8 is recommended)
- Minimum of 16GB available RAM (32GB is recommended)
- Root permission to complete the installation and perform administrative Tableau tasks
- Public web access required for dependencies, registration and initialization.

#### Installation of Tableau Server

If you are interested in running **Tableau** inside Gemini Central for business intelligence or analysis purposes, select the '**Activate**' button from the **Featured Platforms** panel.

Featured Platforms			
CIMINI		splunk>	‡‡‡ + a b   e a u
Product: Gemini Explore	Status: Not Install	Product: Splunk Enterprise Status: Splunk 7.3.4 (build 13e97039fb6	5) Product: Tableau Server Status: Not Install
Gemini Explore enables you to diagnose pr visually. You may define the understanding relationships between them, and then unco discover the hidden stories in a visual way, across data silos and visualize the relation	roblems and uncover insights g of your data and the over the complex scenarios or . You can explore the data iships.	Splunk Enterprise makes it simple to collect, analyze and act upon the untapped value of the big data generated by your technology infrastructure, security systems and business applications-giving you the insights to drive operational performance and business results.	Governed self-service analytics at scale with Tableau Server. Share your data and dashoards to multiply your impact. Whether you keep your Server deployment on-prem or deploy to the public cloud you can keep the management of your server in your hands.
ACTIVATE		ACTIVATE	ACTIVATE

This will open up a Tableau Server Installation page;

HOME	Tableau Server Installation	
	Prerequisite	
	Internet access required Minimum number of physical cores: 4 Minimum nemory size: 1668 Minimum available disk size: 1568	
	Step 1: Download Tableau Server Software (RPM)	
TABLEAU	You may download it from Tableau download site: https://www.tableau.com/downloads/server/rpm	
	Step 2: Upload and Install Tableau Server Software	
		C Upload & Install
	Step 3: Run Initiailize Wizard on Tableau Server	
	After the Tableau Server is installed, it will lead you to the Initialize Wizard: Tableau Server Manager	

If you do not already have the Tableau Server **rpm** file, use the link in **Step 1** to obtain the latest version, direct from the Tableau website.

Upload the appropriate Tableau **rpm** file using the '**Upload and Install**' link at **Step 2**.

Tableau Server Installation				
Uploaded Versior	1			
TABLEAU-SERVER	2020-2-3.x86_641			
Default Admin User				
Username				
tableau				
Password tableau				

On completion of the upload, the **Tableau Server Installation** screen will be displayed giving details of the version.

A default Admin user for Tableau is suggested;

Username: tableau

Password: tableau

Edit these details accordingly if preferred, but record them securely.

Note that this process also creates a Gemini **OS User** with the same credentials, that can be used for SSH access.

CANCEL

Select the 'Start' button at the bottom of the panel to begin the Server Installation.

The Tableau Server will take a few minutes to install, and on completion will revert back to the **Installation Wizard** dashboard;

Step 2: Upload and Install Tableau Server Software	
[	
	1 Upload & Install
Step 3: Run Initiailize Wizard on Tableau Server	

After the Tableau Server is installed, it will lead you to the Initiailize Wizard: Tableau Server Manager

Run through the Tableau initialisation process by selecting the **Tableau Server Manager** link at **Step 3**: This will take you to the **Tableau Services Manager** screen which has been made available on the following port:

https://<gemini\_instance>:8850

Sign in using the credentials entered at **Step 2**:

+ <sup>++</sup> + ++++ ++++ + a b   e a u	
Sign In to Tableau Services Manager Enter administrator credentials. <i>Learn more</i>	
tableau	
Sign In	

Enter your Tableau License key or optionally register for the 14-day trial option;

○— Activate		— () ——— Register	O	0	
	Enter your lice	nse product key t	o get started wit	h Tableau Server.	
	Product Key				
	The key has	20 characters -0000-00	00-000	-000	
		l can't find i	my product key.		
				Activate Licens	e
		Try it free	for 14 days		
		Start Tablea	au Server Trial		

When initializing **Tableau**, care should be taken to select the correct Identity Store and Gateway options, as these can not be changed following installation, and the default **Gateway Port** is already in use within Gemini Central.

- Select the 'Local' Identity store, unless you want to use Active Directory
- Change the default **Gateway Port** from '80' to '8888' (port 80 is already in use)

<b>—</b> Activate	Re	gister	Setup	Initialize
	The settin	gs below are all	you need to get started	ł.
	Identity Store You cannot char Local Active Dire	n <mark>ge the identity</mark> s	store after initializing.	
	Gateway Port Port Number:	8888		

Select the '**Initialize**' button to instigate the install, and monitor as it moves through the installation process.

	Regi	ster	Setup	()
	NOB!	5001	octup	Inclanz
Initiali	zina			
muanz	g			
Step 11	of 34			
Waiting for s	services to rec	onfigure.		
11:22:35 A	M succeeded:	Updating C	onfiguration.	under strange
11:22:35 #	M succeeded:	Generating	passwords.	pending changes.
11:22:36 P	M succeeded:	Generating	Unique Cluster Ide	ntifier.
11:22:38 #	M succeeded:	Generating	search server ssl	certificate.
11:22:39 #	M succeeded:	Generating	Elastic Server SSL	certificate.
11:22:41 A	M succeeded:	Generating	ActiveMQ Server SS	L Certificate.
11:22:42 #	M succeeded:	Generating	key store.	
11:22:43 F	M succeeded:	Promoting	configuration.	
This process c	ould take a w	hile to finisl	h.	
Click Learn mo	e about confi	guring your	server deployment w	ith Tableau
Services Mana	ger. The serve	r will be runn	ning after the initializa	ation is
complete.			-	
You will need t	o create a Tal	oleau Serve	r Administrator acco	ount when
this process fi	nishes			
1115 process 11	13103.			

Installation can take several minutes, and note that a **Tableau Server Administrator** account will need to be created on completion of this process.



When the **Initialization Complete** message is displayed, return to the **Gemini Installation Wizard** dashboard.

Step 4: should now be visible (a browser refresh may be required at this point);

Step 4: Create Default User Accou	unt
Now the Tableau Server is installed and online. Create the fir	rst Tableau Server user account in below to complete the installation.
Username	
tabuser	
Password	
•••••	
CREATE	

Use this to create the required **Tableau Server Administrator** account to enable the login to Tableau. Edit the details with your preferred Username and Password credentials, and select the '**Create**' button.

Login to **Tableau** using the Gateway port set during initialization ie.

```
https://<gemini_instance>:8888
```

Following integration with **Gemini Central**, some useful Server controls are available from the **Tableau / Service Control** menu, including an optional Boot-Start feature.

Номе	Tableau Server Service Control
	Server Status:
CLUSTER	🍈 Stop 🕐 Start 🔃 Restart 🚫 Uninstall
LICENSE	De al Olard
+++++++	ROOT STALL
++++ TABLEAU	Enable Tableau Boot-Start Enable Boot-Start in order to start Tableau server automatically at boot time.
SETTINGS	

# MinIO Object Storage

Gemini have teamed up with the S3 object storage company MinIO to offer an alternative Splunk SmartStore option for your storage solution. For details on this solution please contact Gemini on <u>contact@geminidata.com</u>

# LOG Menu

The **LOG** tab is the starting point for building a **Syslog-NG** environment, otherwise known as Gemini **Log Receiver**, using Gemini instances.

The benefits of a centralized log receiver have been well documented over the years, and **syslog** has gained near-universal support across most platforms.

The **Log Receiver** feature in **Gemini Central** includes 'log splitting' features based on **syslog-ng**, allowing a granular approach to the logging of network-related products and equipment. The inclusion of an HEC receiver as a 'destination' was new in Gemini Enterprise V2.9.

In order to deal with all your syslog requirements, we recommend adding **Log Receiver** as an integral part of the **Splunk Environments** dashboard in **Gemini Central**. This could incorporate a single standalone instance, or a small cluster of instances to offer 'high availability'.

By using our **Manage Group** and **Failover** features, **Load Balancing** and **High Availability** can be achieved. Each Gemini instance will feature both **Splunk** and the **Log Receiver** working together in a **Manage Group** to collate the events and forward them on to your Splunk Indexers or HEC collector.

This section is designed to help you create the necessary rules to receive, filter and store your incoming network-based logs and forward this to your Splunk environment.

# The features of Gemini Log Receiver

The Gemini **Log Receiver** dashboard has been designed to offer a simple visual experience that makes it easy to create, view and troubleshoot your Syslog rules.

#### Other key features are listed below;

- Multiple rules allowed for various data sources.
- Powerful filters to split Syslog into different log file destinations or HEC collectors.
- Easily integrate with Splunk.
- Integral log rotation for better housekeeping.
- Rules can be replicated and distributed to other nodes if required.

# Rule Manager

The Rule Manager dashboard can be viewed from the LOG menu within the Gemini web interface.

A required log receiver '**Rule**' can be divided into three potential sections; **Source**, **Filter**(optional) and **Destination**.

Each **Rule** has flexibility, for instance, it does not necessarily need to contain a **Filter**, and its **Destination** can either be a generic receiver file or be separated into a more granular file, as desired.



# Log Receiver - Rule Manager Dashboard

The first step in building a Log Receiver environment in Gemini is to create the Syslog-NG rules required.

To create a new '**Rule**' select the '+ **Create New Rule**' button on the **Log Receiver** dashboard, and assign it a logical name. Select the '**Save**' button to move through the process of adding a Source and Destination definition.



If at any time you need to edit or delete a Rule, use the vertical ellipsis menu located adjacent to each Rule.



Delete

# Log Receiver - Source

Enter a logical **Source Name** of your choice to define the source host, and select from either the UDP or TCP protocol and select the port required for the source host.

	Log Receiver	Edit Firewall
	Rules     Settings     Cluster       Create New Rule       UEBA ruler       Rule3       Firewall log receiver	Source Name Firewall Data Stream Protocol UDP Transmission Encryption TLS Private Key
Supports TLS and _ custom user certificates	Frewall :	Certificate Data Stream Port 514

Add encryption in the form of TLS or a custom provided certificate. Note that encryption is only available for the TCP protocol.

Select the '**Save**' button to create the first part of the **Rule**. This will add the **Rule** to the dashboard for the addition of a **Destination** or optional **Filter**.

Rules	Settings	Cluster
+ c	reate New Ru	le
Rule1		
	firewall :	
	Edit	
	Add filter	
	Add destinatio	n
	Copy from	
	Select	•

To access the options available for completing or modifying a **Rule**, use the small **vertical ellipsis** button associated with each one, shown in the picture opposite.

- Edit Rules can be edited at any time using this option
- Add filter Enable and configure an optional log receiver filter
- Add destination Each Rule must have a destination applied before it can be saved.
- **Copy from** Enables a quick way to replicate similar Rule components.

# Log Receiver - Destination

A **Destination** is required in order for the **Rule** to be saved. To add an appropriate destination file to the log receiver, select the '**Add destination**' option from the **vertical ellipsis** menu associated with the chosen **Rule** to reveal a submenu.

syslog_UDP :	
Edit	
Add filter	
Add Destination	FILE
Copy from	TCP
Select	UDP
	Splunk HEC

 When choosing Add Destination, a submenu appears offering the choice between a log file, TCP/UDP port, or a Splunk HEC destination.

Note that if a **Filter** option is required, this can be added later (see next section).

Add a logical destination name - preferably using your own naming convention document - for the **Destination Name** entry.

#### **Destination Log File Splitting - Overview**

This feature enables a **Rule** for a single **data source** to create multiple destination files based on various criteria, such as host value, Facility or protocol.

Without any log file splitting in place, the destination location and filename of receiver files will be created in the **/opt/sbox/data/<rule\_name>/** directory, with a filename dictated by the **'Destination File**' entry box. The exact directory location for the **Destination File** will depend on your choice of **Log File Splitting** applied.

For instance, if the 'Facility' option is chosen separate sub-directories containing events from different syslog daemon facility values will be created (Note: there are case sensitive)

If a syslog message does not fall into another facility value, it will default to the 'user' facility. Otherwise, authentication events will find themselves in the 'auth' directory, kernel events in the 'kern' directory, etc. Examples of resultant directories are given below;

/opt/sbox/data/syslog\_UDP/user/syslog\_UDP.log /opt/sbox/data/syslog\_UDP/auth/syslog\_UDP.log /opt/sbox/data/syslog\_UDP/kern/syslog\_UDP.log





Decide on how you want log rotation to operate on each data source.

Selecting a specific Splunk sourcetype and index will help with Splunk's data input procedure. It is essential that the **Index** or **Indexes** described here have been created on the Splunk Indexers before the Log Receiver is active.

Indexes should be created using a Cluster Master app where Indexer Clustering is used.

NoteThe 'Monitor in Splunk' feature shown here will only be visible if Splunk has<br/>been 'Activated' on this instance.

This option will allow the setting of a Sourcetype used to create a 'monitored input' in the /etc/system/local/inputs.conf file	
	<b>IMPORTANT:</b> It is crucial that any <b>Index</b> specified here has been created at <b>all</b> your Production Indexers before forwarding is enabled. It will also need to exist locally, if you are testing the rules locally before enabling 'Splunk Forwarding'.
Note	The ' <b>Final</b> ' Log path flags checkbox should not normally be used. This is a special case scenario sometimes required if rules created are in conflict with one another.
	Check with support@geminidata.com if you are considering using this feature.

#### Destination Log File Splitting - By host

This option allows us to split the network feed by the originating host.

The host can be identified by either IP address or DNS hostname. Confirm this selection using the **'Settings'** panel located at the top of the dashboard.

Destination Name	
syslog_UDP_dest	
Log path flags Final	
Log File Splitting	
None (User Defined)	
• Host	
Facility	
Level (Severity)	
O Program	
User Custom Path	
Destination File	
syslog_UDP.log	

Log Receiver requirement: To receive events over UDP:514 from various devices on the network and split by 'Host IP address'.

Using the **Log Receiver** dashboard, we have created;

- a Rule called Syslog Server
- a Source called syslog\_UDP
- a Destination called syslog\_UDP\_dest
- a Destination Filename called syslog\_UDP.log

We have enabled the 'Host' option from the Log File Splitting selector to create separate sub-directories containing events from different devices.

If a syslog message came from the host 10.1.1.12, it would create the following file in the following location;

/opt/sbox/data/**syslog\_UDP/10.1.1.12/syslog\_** UDP.log

Note: We have chosen to split by IP address(default), not DNS name

#### **Destination Log File Splitting - By Facility**

This option allows us to split the network feed by the '**selector**' field of the **syslogd daemon**.

Select the 'Log File Splitting' value of 'Facility' to filter on the part of the system *generating the message*, enabling you to split by one of the following keywords;

- auth
- authpriv
- cron
- daemon
- kern
- Ipr
- mail
- Edit syslog\_UDP\_dest

**Destination Name** 

syslog\_UDP\_dest

Log path flags

🗌 Final

Log File Splitting

None (User Defined)

- Host
- Facility
- Level (Severity)
- Program

User Custom Path

mycustomdir1/mycustomdir2/...

#### **Destination File**

syslog\_UDP.log

#### Full Path

/opt/sbox/data/syslog\_UDP/\$FACILITY/syslog\_UDP.log

- mark
- news
- syslog
- user
- uucp
- local0 through local7

All these keywords (with the exception of mark) correspond to the similar "**LOG\_**" values specified to the openlog() and syslog() routines

Log Receiver requirement: To receive events over UDP:514 from various devices on the network and split by 'Facility'

Using the **Log Receiver** dashboard, we have created;

- a Rule called Syslog Server
- a Source called syslog\_UDP
- a **Destination** called syslog\_UDP\_dest
- a Destination Filename called syslog\_UDP.log

We have enabled the '**Facility**' option from the **Log File Splitting** selector to create separate sub-directories containing events from different syslog daemon facility values (Note: there are case sensitive)

If the syslog message does not fall into another facility value, it will default to the '**user**' facility. Otherwise, **authentication** events will find themselves in the '**auth**' directory, **kernel** events in the '**kern**' directory, etc. Example directories below;

/opt/sbox/data/syslog\_UDP/user/syslog\_UDP.log

/opt/sbox/data/syslog\_UDP/auth/syslog\_UDP.log

/opt/sbox/data/syslog\_UDP/kern/syslog\_UDP.log

#### Destination Log File Splitting - By Level(Severity)

This option allows us to split the network feed by the 'action' field of the syslogd daemon, commonly known as 'Severity'.

Select the 'Log File Splitting' value of 'Level(Severity)' to filter on severity of the message, enabling you to split by one of the following - listed in order of most critical to least critical;

- emerg
- alert
- crit
- err
- warning
- notice
- info
- debug

These keywords also correspond to the similar "LOG\_" values specified to the *syslog()* routine

# Edit syslog\_UDP\_dest

Destination Name

syslog\_UDP\_dest

Log path flags

🗌 Final

Log File Splitting

None (User Defined)

Host

- Facility
- Level (Severity)
- Program

User Custom Path

mycustomdir1/mycustomdir2/...

**Destination File** 

syslog\_UDP.log

Full Path

/opt/sbox/data/syslog\_UDP/\$LEVEL/syslog\_UDP.log

Log Receiver requirement: To receive events over UDP:514 from various devices on the network and split by 'Severity'.

Using the **Log Receiver** dashboard, we have created;

- a Rule called Syslog Server
- a Source called syslog\_UDP
- a Destination called syslog\_UDP\_dest
- a Destination Filename called syslog\_UDP.log

We have enabled the 'Level(Severity)' option from the Log File Splitting selector to create separate sub-directories containing events with different Severity values, for example;

/opt/sbox/data/syslog\_UDP/alert/syslog\_UDP.log

/opt/sbox/data/syslog\_UDP/crit/syslog\_UDP.log

/opt/sbox/data/syslog\_UDP/warning/syslog\_UDP.I og

#### Destination Log File Splitting - By Program

This option allows us to split the network feed by the **Program** or process involved as defined in the message. This can be useful to segregate by **sshd**, **ftp**, **docker**, etc. if that is something that is required.

# Edit syslog\_UDP\_dest

Destination Name			
syslog_UDP_dest	Log Receiver requirement: To receive events		
Log path flags Final	over <b>UDP:514</b> from various devices on the network and split by ' <b>program/process</b> '.		
Log File Splitting	Using the <b>Log Receiver</b> dashboard, we have created;		
O None (User Defined)			
O Host	<ul> <li>a Rule called Syslog Server</li> <li>a Source called syslog LIDP</li> </ul>		
Security	<ul> <li>a Destination called</li> </ul>		
Level (Severity)	syslog_UDP_dest		
• Program	<ul> <li>a Destination Filename called syslog_UDP.log</li> </ul>		
User Custom Path			
	We have enabled the ' <b>Program</b> ' option from the <b>Log File Splitting</b> selector to create		
Destination File	separate sub-directories containing events with different <b>program/process</b> values, for example;		
syslog_UDP.log			
Full Path	/opt/sbox/data/ <b>syslog_UDP/sshd/syslog_UDP.log</b>		
/opi/sbox/data/sysiog_ODP/\$PROGRAMI/sysiog_ODP.log	/opt/sbox/data/ <b>syslog_UDP/ftp/syslog_UDP.log</b>		
	/opt/sbox/data/ <b>syslog_UDP/dockerd/syslog_UDP.I</b> og		

## Destination Log File Splitting - User Custom Path

For any of the above options, or at any time during the creation or modification of rules, a separate 'Customer defined' sub-directory can be formed. This can be used to further segregate events perhaps.

The result of adding a '**User Custom Path**' would create one or more subdirectory levels as required that follow the '**Rule**' name.

For example, if an entry of '**mycustomerdir**' was added to the **User Custom Path** input box, the result would become;

/opt/sbox/data/<rule\_name>/mycustomerdir/<log\_file\_split>/<Destination\_File\_name>

Note It is recommended that you create a naming convention for your log receiver components, ie. Rule, Source, Filter and Destination naming.

#### Log Receiver Settings - Filter

Despite all the options so far discussed, it is often required to enable another layer of filtering to the collection of log files, and this can be achieved by the addition of a '**Filter**'.

Together with splitting the network feed using the '**Log File Splitting**' methods described, further filtering can be achieved by the following three methods;

- Network Segment
- Hostname
- Regular expression

This would, for example, enable us to filter by both **Host** and **Severity** if we required, and as shown in the example below. Notice that color has been added to visually distinguish between the **Source**(red), **Filter**(green) and **Destination**(blue).

syslog_UDP : firewall1 :	firewall1_Dest	
--------------------------	----------------	--

#### Filter by Host

In order to create a **Filter**, select the '**Add Filter**' option from the vertical ellipsis menu at the **Source** of the rule in question. The following example shows the addition of a Filter called 'firewall1'.

Edit firewall1

Filt	ter Name
fi	rewall1
Ту	De la
	Match Use a regular expression to filter messages based on a specified header or content field.
0	Host Match a regular expression to the text of the log message.
	Netmask Select only messages sent by a host whose IP address belongs to the specified IPv4 subn For example: 192.168.5.0/255.255.255.0 or 192.168.5.0/24.
Filt	er
fi	rewall1

#### Edit firewall1\_Dest

Destination Name	
firewall1_Dest	
Log path flags	
Log File Splitting	
None (User Defined)	
Host	
Facility	
<ul> <li>Level (Severity)</li> </ul>	
Program	
User Custom Path	
Destination File	
firewall1_Dest.log	

/opt/sbox/data/syslog\_UDP/\$LEVEL/firewall1\_Dest.log

The filter has been created to specifically locate the **Host 'firewall1'** using a regular expression against the source network feed.

As can be seen here, the **Destination** for this filter is further split by the '**Severity**' value.

The destination file can be seen in the value of the '**Full Path**'.

#### Filter by Netmask

#### Edit Prod\_network

Filt	tar Nama	
P	rod_network	
Тур	pe	
$\bigcirc$	Match Use a regular expression to filter messages based on a sp	ecified header or content field.
$\bigcirc$	Host Match a regular expression to the text of the log message	
0	Netmask Select only messages sent by a host whose IP address be For example: 192.168.5.0/255.255.255.0 or 192.168.5.0/2	elongs to the specified IPv4 subnet 4.
Filt	ter	
1(	0.1.5.0/24	

By choosing the **Netmask** option, filters can be used to segregate between different Networks by adding notation in the form of **network\_address/network\_mask** or by **CIDR** notation.

For example, by selecting the '**Netmask**' filter type, and adding '**10.1.5.0/24**' to the Filter entry box, we can segregate the events from this network from others.

#### Filter by Match

#### Edit PIX-firewall

Filter Name	
PIX-firewall	
Туре	
• Match Use a regular expression to filter messages based on a specified he	eader or content field.
<ul> <li>Host Match a regular expression to the text of the log message.</li> </ul>	
Netmask Select only messages sent by a host whose IP address belongs to For example: 192.168.5.0/255.255.255.0 or 192.168.5.0/24.	the specified IPv4 subnet.
Filter	
%PIX	

By choosing the **Match** option, filters can be setup for any number of categories by using a series of regular expressions.

For example, by selecting the '**Match**' filter type, and adding '**%PIX**' to the Filter entry box, we can filter specifically for Cisco-PIX firewall messages.

# Forwarding Log Receiver events into Splunk

Forwarding the granular logs created by the **Log Receiver** into **Splunk** for analysis and reporting purposes is made easier in **Gemini Central** by the use of its integral **Splunk** instance which can be repurposed as a **Heavy Forwarder** as shown in the diagram below.

Once Splunk has been activated, **Log Receiver** rules will automatically be created as Splunk **Monitored Inputs** in an inputs.conf file. (Note: Splunk will need to be restarted to input any changes).



# Enable Splunk Indexers to receive events from the Log Receiver

The following tasks are all to be completed on Production Indexers in receipt of Log Receiver data. This is usually achieved using a 'Base app' from the Cluster Master instance as detailed below.

In order for the **Splunk Indexer Cluster** to receive logs from the **Log Receiver**, all Production Indexers must;

- Have their **Receiver Port** open (default 9997)
- Contain the Indexes used in Log Receiver Rule settings

## Verify the Receiver Port at the Indexers

If you already have data in Splunk, the **Receiver Port**, usually set to 9997, is probably already open to receive events from **Universal Forwarders**. If in doubt, or if this is a new installation, verify this using Gemini's **Splunk / Command** dashboard at any Indexer instance. The following command will confirm the status with a message, 'Receiving is enabled' or 'Receiving is disabled'.

display listen -auth admin:<password>

If the result 'Receiving is disabled' is displayed, use the following process at the Splunk **Cluster Master** instance;

- Login to the Gemini web interface of the Cluster Master instance and navigate to the Splunk / Config Editor dashboard.
- Using the config editor screen, click through to locate the /opt/splunk/etc/master-apps/\_cluster/local directory
- Select the 'Create New File' button, and enter the name inputs.conf at the prompt (take care that this is spelled correctly!). Select the 'Add' button to confirm.
- Select the newly created **inputs.conf** file to reveal a simple editor, and copy and paste the following into the box. Select the '**Save**' button to confirm

[splunktcp://9997]

#### Creating an Index at the Indexers

It is crucial that any **Index** specified in the creation of **Log Receiver Rules** has been created at *all* the **Splunk** indexers before forwarding is enabled. This is usually achieved at the **Cluster Master** by a **Base App** setting in an **indexes.conf** file. Please verify that this has been achieved and that the required indexes exist before proceeding.

NoteThis process can be achieved using **Deployment Server** or a similar log<br/>management tool. Please refer to your Splunk Admin if in any doubt.

If, as an example, you had created an index destination called 'syslog' when creating your Log Receiver rules, the following inputs.conf file would need to be created at the Cluster Master.

- Login to the Gemini web interface of the Cluster Master instance and navigate to the Splunk / Config Editor dashboard.
- Using the config editor screen, click through to locate the /opt/splunk/etc/master-apps/\_cluster/local directory
- Select the '**Create New File**' button and enter the name **indexes.conf** at the prompt (take care that this is spelled correctly!). Select the '**Add**' button to confirm.
- Select the newly created **indexes.conf** file to reveal a simple editor, and copy and paste the following into the box. Select the '**Save**' button to confirm

[syslog] homePath = \$SPLUNK\_DB/syslog/db coldPath = \$SPLUNK\_DB/syslog/colddb thawedPath = \$SPLUNK\_DB/syslog/thaweddb repFactor = auto Any changes or additions such as these made at the **Cluster Master** should be followed by a '**cluster-bundle push**' in order to distribute to the Indexers that form the Indexer Cluster. Complete the following procedure after such changes.

- Login to the Splunk web interface of the Cluster Master node (ie. http://<cluster\_master\_IP>:8000)
- Navigate to the **Settings / Indexer Clustering** dashboard.
- Select 'Configuration Bundle Actions' from the Edit menu (top right of the dashboard)
- Conduct a '**Push**' of the configuration bundle.

A Rolling Restart will probably not be required on this occasion, but leave Splunk to advise.

# Testing Log Receiver Rules before enabling forwarding (optional)

This step is purely optional, and you may wish to omit this step if you are familiar with both syslog and the Log Receiver feature.

As **Log Receiver Rules** are saved at the **Rule Manager** dashboard, the necessary Splunk input stanzas are automatically added to the local Splunk instance via an **inputs.conf** file stored in the /opt/splunk/etc/system/local directory, although please note that a *restart* of Splunk will be required to activate any changes to monitor input(s).

Login to the **Splunk** web interface at your **Log Receiver** instance, and run a search at the index (ie. index=syslog) to verify that the **Rules** are working correctly (see below for an example).


index=syslog							
√ 13 events (before 3/24/20 6:13:48.000 AM) No Event Sampling ▼							
Events (13) Pattern	s Statistics	Visua	alization				
Format Timeline 🔻	- Zoom Out	+ Zoo	om to Selection	< Deselect			
		s	ource			[	×
		5	Values, 100% of even	ts		Selected Yes No	
<ul> <li>Hide Fields</li> <li>SELECTED FIELDS</li> <li>bast 1</li> </ul>	≔ All Fields	Re To Ev	eports op values vents with this field	Top values by time		Rare values	Severity) Log File Splitting applied
a source 5		Va	alues		Count	%	Severity) Log File Splitting applied
a sourcetype 1		/0	opt/sbox/data/syslo	g_UDP/crit/syslog_UDP.log	9	69.231%	.g_UDP.log sourcetype = syslog
INTERESTING FIELDS		/c fi	/opt/sbox/data/syslog_UDP/10.195.50.250/PIX- firewall.log			7.692%	Severity) Log File Splitting applied
# date_nour 2 # date_mday 2 # date_minute_6		/c g	opt/sbox/data/syslo	g_UDP/crit/firewall1_dest.lo	1	7.692%	g_UDP.log sourcetype = syslog
a date_month 1		/c	opt/sbox/data/syslo	g_UDP/ftp/syslog_UDP.log	1	7.692%	ig_UDP.log sourcetype = syslog
# date_second 9 a date_wday 2		/c	opt/sbox/data/syslo	g_UDP/user/syslog_UDP.log	1	7.692%	Severity) Log File Splitting applied
# date_year 1			3.23.33.000 AIVI	host = 10.195.50.250 source	e = /opt/	sbox/data/syslog_UDP/crit/	/syslog_UDP.log sourcetype = syslog
<pre>a date_zone 1 a index 1 # linecount 1 a punct 3 a splunk_server 1 # timeendnos 1</pre>	>	>	3/24/20 9:23:32.000 AM	Mar 24 2020 09:23:32 10.195 host = 10.195.50.250 source	.50.250 = /opt/	This is a test with Lev sbox/data/syslog_UDP/crit/	vel(Severity) Log File Splitting applied /syslog_UDP.log sourcetype = syslog
		>	3/24/20 9:23:31.000 AM	Mar 24 2020 09:23:31 10.195 host = 10.195.50.250 source	. 50 . 250 e = /opt/	This is a test with Lev sbox/data/syslog_UDP/crit/	vel(Severity) Log File Splitting applied /syslog_UDP.log sourcetype = syslog
# timestartpos 1		>	3/24/20 9:23:30.000 AM	Mar 24 2020 09:23:30 10.195 host = 10.195.50.250 source	. 50 . 250 e = /opt/	This is a test with Lev sbox/data/syslog_UDP/crit/	vel(Severity) Log File Splitting applied /syslog_UDP.log sourcetype = syslog

#### Create a Heavy Forwarder to forward Log Receiver data

The following tasks are all to be completed from the Splunk web interface acting as a Heavy Forwarder at the Log Receiver instance.

In order to create a **Heavy Forwarder** from the local Splunk instance, we need to complete three tasks;

- Setup forwarding of all logs to the Indexer Cluster.
- **Delete** any local **Index** used in the testing of syslog rules (if used for testing)
- Change the license mode of this instance to that of a 'Forwarding Licence'

To set up forwarding of the logs to the Clustered Indexers. Open the **Forwarding and Receiving** dashboard located in the **Settings** menu of Splunk (see below), and select the **'+ Add New**' button.

Forwarding and receiving		
	Forward data Set up forwarding between two or more Splunk instances.	
	Forwarding defaults	
	Configure forwarding	+ Add new
	Receive data Configure this instance to receive data forwarded from other instances.	
	Configure receiving	+ Add new

Add each **Indexer** and its receiving port to the '**Host**' input box one-by-one, until all Clustered Indexers have been added. If there are many Indexers and you have been granted access to the CLI, it may be easier to edit the /etc/system/local/outputs.conf file directly.

Add new Forwarding and receiving » Forward data » Add ner	w				
	Enter host:port to forw	ard data to. D Host *	ata will be auto load balanced to each host:port. 10.1.5.42:9997 Set as host:port or IP:port. You must also enable receiving on this host.		
				Cancel	Save

If you have conducted testing of the **Log Receiver** Rules on this instance, delete the Index(s) used throughout the testing process. This action will reset the 'fishbucket' index, allowing the events received during testing to be resent to the Production Indexers.

In order to complete the process of making this instance a **Heavy Forwarder**, open the **Settings** / **Licensing** menu, select the '**Change Licensing Group**' button and choose the '**Forwarder License**' option.

**Restart** the Splunk instance to commit all of these changes made at the Heavy Forwarder.

#### Creating a High-Availability Syslog environment

If only one **Log Receiver** instance exists within a network, a single point of failure exists for the collection of Syslog and other network-related events. It is therefore highly recommended to have at least two Log Receiver instances operating in a '**failover mode**'.

As the following diagram suggests, we would recommend creating at least two **Log Receiver** instances working together in a **Gemini Central Group**, sharing the same Log Receiver rules, and using Gemini's built-in **Failover** function to maintain a consistent working presence.



To provide this environment for **Log Receiver**, a **Manage Cluster** and subsequent **Manage Group** will need to be created involving two or more Log Receiver instances. Log Receiver rules must first be manually recreated within any additional members of the **Node Group**.

In order to complete a true High Availability(HA) environment for syslog, complete the following;

#### Step 1: Set up a Log Receiver

Create an initial Log Receiver instance in **Manage** that utilizes **Splunk** as a Heavy Forwarder. Refer to the Log Receiver section for details.

#### Step 2: Create a Manage Cluster and Manage Group

Combine two or more Log Receivers together to form a group suitable for High Availability. Refer to <u>Creating a Manage Cluster</u> section for details.

#### Step 4: Create Failover Groups between members

Use the Failover feature to create two virtual IP Failover Groups between Log Receivers to provide a proper HA environment. Refer to the <u>Failover</u> section for details.

Login to the web interface of any additional Log Receiver instances required, navigate to the **LOG** / **Rule Manager** dashboard and verify that the exact same **Rules** exist on all the instances.

Once verification of the Log Receiver rules has been established, it is important to also verify that the local **Splunk** platform of other Log Receivers has been set up correctly and act in the exact same way as the original Log Receiver. This includes switching to the **Splunk Forwarder Licence** and the setting up of **Indexer Forwarding**.

- Login to the Splunk web interface on the Child node, and navigate to the Settings / Data Inputs / Files & Directories dashboard.
- Scroll to the bottom of the list and observe the Data Inputs pointing to the **/opt/sbox** directories. If there are none present, the Splunk server needs to be restarted following replication of the syslog Rules.
- Navigate to the Settings / Server Controls dashboard, Restart Splunk and return to the Data Inputs dashboard to confirm that the syslog monitor inputs are present and correct.

Note	Do not be tempted to edit the Data Inputs in Splunk. Any changes should be
NOLE	made at each Log Receiver node, prior to a Splunk restart on each node.

- Navigate to the **Splunk Settings / Licensing** dashboard, and change the License type to, '**Forwarder License**'. Restart Splunk when prompted.
- To complete the creation of a Splunk Heavy Forwarder on a Child node, navigate to the Settings / Forwarding and receiving dashboard and select the 'Configure Forwarding' option.
- Using the 'New Forwarding Host' button, enter the Indexer values required for your Indexer Cluster, one by one, in the form of <indexer\_address>:9997

If possible, test each Log Receiver/Heavy Forwarder instance to ensure that they work correctly on their own, prior to enabling the **Failover** feature to achieve full High Availability.

#### Load Balancing a syslog feed

By adding a <u>reciprocal Failover Group</u>, the ability to **Load Balance** a syslog feed between two or more servers is granted.

Load Balancing can be facilitated by a third-party load balancer, like **F5**, or manually created using a number of techniques including; the sending of IP addresses with an even-numbered ending octet to one VIP and odd-numbered ending octets to another VIP.

## NODE Menu

The **NODE** tab is the starting point for the configuration of the host and server functions related to Gemini instances.

## System Time

Accurate timekeeping is vital to ensure the correct event order. If distributed Splunk environments become out of sync, then transactional searches may return inaccurate results from inaccurate event timestamping.

C3		🏓 admin
номе	NODE > System Time	
NODE		
	Tuesday Oct 29 2019 PDT, UTC -07:00	
LICENSE SPLUNK	00:18	
	NTP Service Control	
	Toggle NTP synchronization. Disable to set system time manually.	
	NTP Servers	
	• Add NTP Server	
	NTP Server	_
9	pool.ntp.org	:
	Timezone	
	Select Area	
	America 🗸	
	Los.Angeles (P0T, UTC-07:00)	
	SAVE	

Gemini Central uses pool.ntp.org as a default time source. Additional network time sources, either external or internal may be added by selecting 'Add NTP Server'

C3	Node	System Time	Add NTP Server
HOME		Th	NTP Server
NODE			
CLUSTER		U	
LICENSE			
SPLUNK	Log Receiver Storage Monitoring	Toggle NTP synchronization. Disa	
HADOOP		Add NTP Server	
SETTINGS		NTP Server pool.ntp.org	
ACCOUNT			ADD

Setting the **NTP Sync** toggle to the '**OFF**' position will halt further network time updates and allow for manual editing of the system time. This may be required under special circumstances, but is not advisable for general operations.

Select the 'set Time' option to correct the DateTime manually, or select 'sync with Browser' to update the DateTime settings with the local client PC.



### Name

#### Hostname

To prevent conflicts in distributed Spunk environments as well as declare the source path of received events, Manage requires that each device has a unique hostname.

Splunk will use this unique hostname as a default value to populate both **server.conf** and **inputs.conf** when it is started for the first time.

C3			🟓 admin
Номе	NODE > Name		
	Hostname		
CLUSTER	gemini		
	SAVE		
\$	Local Hosts		
SETTINGS	+ Add New Record		
	IP	Host	
	127.0.0.1	localhost	:
	172.27.14.130	centos	i
	172.27.14.131	gemini-001	:
	172.27.14.132	gemini-002	i

#### Local Hosts

While not required in normal operation, manually configuring local hosts can ensure connectivity between hosts in either the absence or failure of a DNS server.

High latency DNS servers or networks may also benefit from this manual configuration.

The manual configuration of hosts is not considered best practice and should **only** be used in exceptional cases as multiple static configurations can be complex to manage.

Note DNS settings should be configured separately on each network interface using the **Network** tab.

To add a static host, select 'Add New Record' and specify the new host IP address and name.



## Network

Manage network interface configurations may be reviewed and edited here.

Manage supports multiple network interface cards (NICs) and Gemini appliances each contain four or six NICs depending on the model.

NIC bonding and port redirects may also be configured here.

C3	Node	Network					
НОМЕ	System Time	Ethernet Bondin	g Port Redirect				
NODE	Timezone Name Network	<b>eth0</b> Configure Link	DHCP Connected	IP Netmask	192.168.56.101 255.255.255.0	MTU txqueuelen	Edit Configuration 1500 1000
	FTP SSH	Interface State MAC Address	Up 08:00:27:0b:58:6c	Gateway			
LICENSE	SNMP Failover	Name Servers		No name	e server configured.		
	Log Receiver Storage			+ Ad	dd Name Server		
SETTINGS	Monitoring	Routes					
	Backup Benchmark			There is no	o static route existed. Add Route		
		eth1					Edit Configuration
		Configure Link Interface State MAC Address	Disabled Connected Up 08:00:27:bb:99:4d	IP Netmask Gateway		MTU txqueuelen	1500 1000
ACCOUNT		eth2					Edit Configuration

Each NIC may be configured with either a manually assigned IP address or via DHCP.

Note

Advanced configurations like MTU and TX queue length can be configured to improve network performance where appropriate.

Set MTU to a value larger than 1,500 to enable **Jumbo Frame** if the ethernet interface has an **iSCSI** connection. Consult your NAS vendor for more details.

Select the 'Edit Configuration' icon to make any changes, and select the 'Save' button to exit.

63	Node	Network		eth.name
HOME	System Time	Ethernet Bonding Port Redirect		Properties ~
NODE	Timezone Name Network	eth0 Configure DHCP Link Connected	IP Netmask	Configure IPv4 Disable DHCP Manually IP
CLUSTER	FTP SSH	Interface State Up MAC Address 08:00:27:0b:58:6c	Gateway	192.168.56.101 Netmask
LICENSE	SNMP Failover		No name s	Domain
SETTINGS	Log Receiver Storage Monitoring	Routes	+ Add	Other Settings MTU
	Diagnostics Backup		There is no a	txqueuelen
	Benchmark	eth1		
		Configure         Disabled           Link         Connected           Interface State         Up           MAC Address         08:00:27:bb:99:4d	IP Netmask Gateway	
ACCOUNT		eth2		SAVE

Static routes may be added to a specific network interface in order to communicate with networks not directly connected to the Gemini appliance.



## NIC Bonding

Gemini Central provides support for 'link aggregation'. It is possible to bind multiple physical NICs into one '**virtual interface**', in order to increase throughput beyond that of a single connection whilst at the same time providing redundancy in the event of a single NIC failure.

Select '+ Create Virtual Interface' to create a new NIC arrangement.

Select from the available **Physical Network Interfaces**, and using the table below as a guide, choose a **'load balancing and fault tolerance'** option from the **Mode** drop-down menu.

Mode	How it works	Fault Tolerance	Load Balancing
Round Robin	Packets are sequentially transmitted/received through each interface one by one.	No	Yes
Active-Backup	One NIC is active while another NIC is asleep. If the active NIC goes down, another NIC becomes active.	Yes	No
XOR	The MAC address of the slave NIC is matched up against the incoming request's MAC and once this connection is established the same NIC is used to transmit/receive with the destination MAC.	Yes	Yes
Broadcast	All transmissions are sent on all slaves.	Yes	No
Dynamic Link Aggregation	Aggregated NICs act as one NIC which results in a higher throughput whilst providing failover in the case of a NIC failure. This requires switch hardware that supports the <b>IEEE 802.3ad</b> protocol	Yes	Yes
Adaptive Transmit Load Balancing	Outgoing traffic is distributed depending on the current load at each NIC. Incoming traffic is received by the current slave. If the receiving slave fails, another slave takes over the MAC address of the failed slave.	Yes	Yes
Adaptive Load Balancing	Unlike Dynamic Link Aggregation, Adaptive Load Balancing does not require any particular switch configuration. The receiving packets are load-balanced through ARP negotiation. Adaptive Load Balancing is only supported in x86 environments.	Yes	Yes

We have a built-in media-independent interface (MII) to confirm and verify the status of the network interface.

Specify the frequency of monitoring by entering a value in the 'Millisecond Monitor' box. The default value is 100ms.

C3	Node	Network	Create Virtual Interface
HOME		Ethernet Bonding Por	Physical Network Interfaces ~
TIONIL		The	🗌 eth0 🗹 eth1 🔽 eth2 🔲 eth3
			Orthone
NODE			Uptions
			Mode
CLUSTER			IEEE 802.3ad Dynamic link aggregation
			Creates aggregation groups that share the same speed and duplex settings. Utilizes all Physical NICs in the active aggregator group according to the 802.3ad specification. This mode needs social switch support.
LICENSE			Milisecond Monitor (miimon)
			100
SPLUNK			
**			Network ~
SETTINGS			Configure IPv4
			Disabled Manually
ACCOUNT			ADD

Select the '**Add**' button to complete the process.

Once created, the new **Virtual Interface** will be listed in the UI (see the example below). For further configuration or to remove the bonded group, use the appropriate icons.



#### Port Redirect

As with any other application running as a **non-root** user on a Linux/Unix platform, Splunk will be unable to bind and listen to any privileged port (< 1024).

Port Redirect allows you to define rules to redirect incoming connections on privileged ports to a port above 1024.

By default Splunk uses port 9997 to receive data from Forwarders to avoid this issue, but if for instance you had a Syslog server that did not have a Splunk Forwarder, this **Port Redirect** feature could help.

To apply a **Port Redirect**, Select the '**Add redirect Rule**' button, and enter the **Source** (External Port) and **Destination** (Internal Port) in the boxes provided.

Select the 'Add' button to complete the process.

C3	Node	Network	Create Port Redirect Rule
HOME		Ethernet Bonding Por	Add rules here to redirect privileged ports (< 1024) to a larger port number for communications.
		Th	External Port 88
			Internal Port
CLUSTER	SSH		0000
LICENSE			
SPLUNK	Log Receiver Storage		
HADOOP			
SETTINGS			
ACCOUNT			ADD CANCEL

Redirected ports will be listed in the UI (see the example below). Use the '**Add redirect Rule**' button to create other rules.

To remove the rule, locate the vertical ellipsis icon at the end of the row, and choose the '**Remove**' option.

Port Redirect Rules		
+ Add Redirect Rule		
External Port	Internal Port	
External Port 514	Internal Port 8092	

## OS Users

To clarify, Gemini Central uses two types of Users; **OS User** accounts and **Manage User** accounts.

- **OS User** accounts are created for secure SSH access to the instance and **do not** give rights to login to the Gemini web interface.
- Manage Users are created for access to the Gemini web interface, and are discussed in the Authentication section.

Management of **OS User (ssh)** accounts including the addition of SSH public keys and the unlocking of passwords can be achieved from the **OS Users** dashboard.

НОМЕ Create OS User NODE > OS User User Name **OS User Accounts** example - Create OS Use FullName admin OS Users User Group Password Retype Password 🗹 users 🔲 gemini 🗌 sbox 🔲 splunk 🔲 tableau **Replicate OS User Settings** Allow Login 💿 Yes 🔘 No ALL NODES SSH public key CANCEL Note For security reasons, 'disallow' any OS User accounts that are unused.

To unlock a locked **OS User** account, select '**Yes**' in the '**Allow Login**' section.

Gemini Central has two built-in OS users as standard, 'sbox' and 'splunk'.

- Use the **sbox** OS user when dealing with Gemini issues such as instance initialization or recovery.
- Use the **splunk** OS User account for any manual intervention required in the /etc/splunk directory, if this can not be achieved using the <u>Config Editor</u> feature.
- Activation of **Tableau** on the instance will automatically create another OS user, 'tableau'

In some cases you might need a dedicated **OS User** account to run scripts or applications. Assign this dedicated user to appropriate groups for access permissions to other accounts.

OS Users that have been created at the **Management Center**, can be conveniently exported to other Gemini instances using **Manage Groups** if desired.

ct Node Group	
ALL NODES syslogGroup	

In order to use this option, a **Manage Group** would need to exist, then simply select it from the drop-down box and select the '**Submit**' button.

This result of this action can be monitored at the **Cluster / Execute Jobs** dashboard

## FTP

Adding data to Splunk is always best achieved with the use of Universal or Heavy Forwarders.

If for some reason, this is not possible, one option could be to enable the **FTP service** allowing data to be written to a file in the *lopt* directory, which can then be monitored in Splunk.

There are two stages required to enable this feature; the first is to configure the FTP service, and the second is to set up a monitored input (inputs.conf) in Splunk.

Not	Note The FTP protocol is not natively encrypted and should <b>only</b> be used when security practices allow.				sed
5 HOME	Node Ma	anager	FTP Service		
NODE	System <sup>-</sup> Timezon Name	Time e	FTP Service The FTP Service allows data to be uploaded to the the	SBOX /opt folder. Add a Splunk data input rule to monitor this data file.	
CLUSTER	Network FTP		FTP Service Listening Port		
	SNMP Failover		USERNAME	ROOT PATH /opt/splunk/	Add PTP User
	Log Rece Storage Monitori	ng			
	Diagnosi	tic			

#### **FTP Service**

To enable the FTP service, use the '**FTP service**' toggle slider and select the desired port on which you want the service to run (defaults to 2121).

#### **FTP User**

The FTP protocol requires both user credentials and a directory to store received files as part of the configuration.

**Gemini Central** creates a default **FTP User** named '**splunk**' with a home directory of '/opt/splunk'.

For additional FTP accounts, select the 'Add FTP User' button and provide the desired username, password and Home directory folder.

To edit an existing account, including the default Splunk user, simply select the user from the 'Username' column and modify accordingly.



## SSH

The **SSH** service (natively encrypted) is enabled by default on each Gemini Central instance.

Refer to the **OS Users** menu for available user accounts and their group access. Reserved user accounts of '**sbox**' and '**splunk**' included by default as detailed below:

- **sbox** : facing jet function drive
- **splunk**: think adventure kitchen chest

Note that both accounts have an enforced password change at initial login.

C3	Node	SSH Service
номе		SSH Service The SSH service allows you to login and access system through an SSH connection for more advanced operations.
NODE		SSH Settings
CLUSTER		Port SSH Service Listening Port 22 \$
LICENSE	SSH SNMP	Session Timeout
SPLUNK		Forward SSHD Log Forward SSHD logs to /var/log/sstid/sshd.log Allowed Authentification Mathed
SETTINGS		Rekey Limit     Rekey Limit
		Reley Limt will reregotate sesson key when there is over 1GB traffic has been sent in one hour. Which can prevent attacks for the cipher keys. Support Fail To Ban C Restrict connection from client IP which had 3 fails login within one hour.
<b>a</b>		UPDATE
ACCOUNT		

SSH settings can be modified using the following information;

Port:	Listening port of SSH service (default 22)
Session Timeout:	Timeout interval (in minutes)
Forward SSHD Log:	When enabled a copy of SSHD logs will be sent to /var/log/sshd/sshd.log for further use.
Allowed Authentication Method:	SSH login with password or authorized private key. <b>Note:</b> SSH keys are only applicable when Manage is running on AWS
Enable Rekey Limit:	If enabled, this will renegotiate a new key after traffic reaches 1GB. This will prevent against the key being cracked and traffic being decrypted by attackers. <b>Note:</b> AWS only
Support the Fail to Ban:	Enable this to restrict a client that has failed to connect 3 times, for a period of one hour. Note: This is enabled by default.

## SNMP

#### **SNMP Service**

If you require Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) data from the **Gemini Central** instance for reasons of monitoring or alerting, an internal **SNMP service** will need to be enabled.

There are two possible modes of operation available to an external **SNMP Management Host**; the **polling** method, or the **trapping** method. To enable this instance to offer either SNMP option, use the toggle slider for the '**SNMP** Service'

C3		
	ODE > SNMP	
<b>—</b>	SNMP Service Control	
	SNMP Service     Enabling the SNMP service allows simple network management protocol based tools to retrieve system monitoring and alerting information from ye     appliance. Once enabled, please configure SNMP4 to allow remote application requests.	жr
LICENSE		
	SNMP Agent	
SETTINGS	There are no SNMP agents currently configured.  Add SNMP Agent	
	Trap Notification	
	There are no trap destinations currently configured. Add Trap Destination	

#### **SNMP** Agent (polling option)

Once configured, this agent will allow polling of the instance by an **SNMP Agent**.

Verify that the **SNMP Service** has been activated. Select the '**Add SNMP Agent**' button to create a new SNMP agent entry. Multiple SNMP Agents can be configured if required.

Select a unique name for each SNMP Agent and choose an appropriate agent version from the options presented; Version 1, Version 2c or Version 3

Note Only alphanumeric, dot, hyphen, and underscore characters are allowed in the input fields.

#### **SNMP Agent version 1**

SNMP Version 1 is not encrypted and authentication will happen in plain text. This version should therefore only be used when other, more secure versions are not possible. SNMP v1 supports a maximum of 32 bits per counter.

#### **SNMP Agent version 2c**

SNMP Version 2c is also non-encrypted and authentication occurs in plain text. This version should only be used when other, more secure versions are not possible. SNMP V2c supports a maximum of 64 bits per counter.

For either of these two options complete the **Network** and **Maskbit** (Subnet Mask) entries for the host network, and enter a **Community String** for SNMP authentication.

Note: The default string 'public' should be avoided.

C]	Node	SNMP	Create SNMP Agent
HOME		SNMP Service SNMP Trap T	Name
_		SNMP Service	Home Brew
Ŧ		Enabling the SNMP service allows alerting information from your ap	Agent Version
NODE			
二日		SNMP Agent	
CLUSTER		Th	Network
_			10.10.9.0
LICENSE	Failover		Mackhit
	Log Receiver		255 255 255 0
>			200.200.200.0
SPLUNK			Community String
5			never_ever_public
HADOOP			
- <b>\$</b>			
SETTINGS			
ACCOUNT			CANCEL

#### **SNMP Agent version 3**

SNMP Version 3 supports authentication, encryption and 64 bit counters. This would therefore be the optimum choice if you need SNMP alerting.

Select the most appropriate authorization method under the Authorization Algorithm section. Gemini Central supports either **MD5** or **SHA** authentication. Enter the desired authentication password.

Manage supports **DES** or **AES128** encryption methods. Select the desired method and enter the encryption password. Select the ADD button to complete the process.

Note: AES128 is considered to be the more secure of the two options.

C3	Node	SNMP	Create SNMP Agent
HOME		SNMP Service SNMP Trap T	Name
NODE		Enabling the SNMP service allows alerting information from your ap	Agent Version
CLUSTER		SNMP Agent	Authorization Algorithm
LICENSE			MD5 SHA Authorization Password
SPLUNK			Encryption Algorithm DES O AES128
HADOOP			Encryption Password
SETTINGS			
ACCOUNT			ADD

#### **SNMP Trap Destinations (trapping option)**

Once configured, this option will send SNMP information to an external SNMP Manager host.

Provide the address of the SNMP Manager Host and and follow up with specific trap thresholds required for this Gemini instance.

Enter the **IP** address of your SNMP Host

Select the protocol you prefer from the following:

- trapsink send SNMPv1 traps
- trap2sink send SNMPv2 traps
- **informsink** send '**inform**' notifications

Enter the '**Community String**' (see Note below)

Enter the chosen '**Port**' over which to send information.

## Note

Only alphanumeric, dot, hyphen, and underscore characters are allowed in the input fields.



#### **SNMP Trap Thresholds**

Enable the desired SNMP trap frequency and threshold values required for the instance performance metrics.

SNMP Traps may be enabled for:

- Processes A multi-choice offering including; ftp, splunk, ssh and syslog-ng
- Disk usage
- Network Link
- CPU usage
- Memory usage

63		🏓 admin
HOME	NMP Trap Thresholds	
	PROCESS	
NODE	Frequency (sec)	
	Process	
	🚺 ftp 💟 splunk 🔲 ssh 🔍 syslog-ng	
	DISK	
SPLUNK	Frequency (sec)	
\$	Threshold ( < % )	
SETTINGS		
	Frequency (sec)	
	600	
	CPU	
	Frequency (sec)	
	Threshold (>%)	
	O 95	
	MEMORY	
	Frequency (sec)	
	600 Threshold ( <mb)< td=""><td></td></mb)<>	
	01	
	SAVE	

## Failover

This feature involves one or more **Failover Groups** offering **High Availability.** This is mainly intended for the appliance version of Gemini Central, as Cloud and VM infrastructure usually employ their own technology to cope with network related issues.

Adding failover would be a natural extension to the use of **Log Receiver** in Gemini Central. If you are using the Log Receiver feature, the following diagram offers two options involving the creation of one or two **Failover Groups** as used specifically with two Log Receiver instances. Although not explicit to Log receiver instances, these examples are intended to show how this feature can be used in one of two modes of operation, Option A - only one server involved, or Option B - reciprocal mode



The first example, **Option A**, describes a method that is controlled entirely by one single Log Receiver, in this case allowing the failover of Log Receiver 1 to Log Receiver 2, should Log Receiver 1 fail.

In the second example, **Option B**, two failover groups have been created, each controlled by one of the Log Receivers. In this scenario, either device could fail and the other one will take over allowing a reciprocal failover for each device. This option has the advantage, should it be required, of offering an additional **Load Balancing** feature as both **VIP addresses** are available. For example, syslog hosts ending with an odd IP address could be directed to one VIP address, and hosts ending with an even IP address to the other. This is just an idea, it is up to you whether or not you use this feature.

Each **Failover Group** has one 'active' master node using a **virtual IP address**, and one or more standby slave nodes that are ready to take over for a failed master. Each Gemini appliance can be part of a different Failover Group and each group should be provisioned using a different port number.

#### **Creating a Failover Group**

Before creating a new failover group, you will need a VIP address that you can use for each Failover Group. This static IP address is usually provided by your Network Administrator. Please ensure you have the necessary VIP addresses before you begin the following process.

#### Option A - The process to set up a single Failover Group

Login to the Manage web interface of your primary instance, in our example this is 'Log Receiver 1', and navigate to the Node / Failover dashboard (shown below).

Select the '+ Create New Failover Group' button



#### **Create New Failover Group**

Virtual NIC - IP Address 10.2.42.177	to reveal the setup screen opposite;
Monitor Detect Splunk	Generally, the Network Administrator would allocate a static IP address for the VIP address, which should be entered in the ' <b>Virtual NIC - IP</b> Address' box.
Add node to this group	
Remote Node	The Monitor drop-down box reveals a ' <b>Detect</b> <b>Splunk</b> ' value that should always be selected. This invokes a ' <b>keepalived</b> ' daemon to monitor Splunk on this device.
	The <b>Remote Node</b> box requires manual entry of the device(s) that you wish to 'failover' too. The '+ button is only required if more than one device is involved
ADD	

Select the 'Add' button to save the changes to reveal the following dashboard.

IODE > Failover		
Failover Groups		
+ Create New Failover Group	3 Join Existing Group	
Virtual IP	Local	Members
10.2.42.177	10.2.42.155	1

Note There is currently only **one member** of the Failover Group, this is of course incomplete. In order to complete the process, another device, in our case Log Receiver 2 will need to join the Failover Group.

#### Joining a Failover Group

To complete the Failover Group, login to the Manage web interface of another instance, in our example, **Log Receiver 2**, and navigate to its **Node / Failover** dashboard.

Select the 'Join Existing Group' button and enter the VIP address used for this Failover Group.

Select the '**Join**' button at the bottom of the dashboard to make the connection and complete the 'Group'.

Join Existing Group		
Virtual NIC - IP Address		
10.2.42.177		
SCAN		
Virtual IP		
10.2.42.177		•

Alternatively, the '**Scan**' button can be used to invoke a search for the Virtual IP address and populate the entry box as shown below.

Note that if the scan fails to detect the IP address, add the VIP manually as directed above, and select the '**Join**' button

A dashboard similar to that below should follow, suggesting that there are now two members in this Failover Group

Failover Groups		
+ Create New Failover Group	Doin Existing Group	
Virtual IP	Local	Members
10.2.42.177	△ 10.2.42.156	2

For extra detail regarding the Failover Group, select the **Virtual IP** address listed to display the following dashboard;

IODE > Failover		Failover Group -	10.2.42.177	
Failover Groups		Group Properties		
• Create New Failover Group	g Group	Virtual IP Monitor	10.2.42.177 Detect Splunk	
Virtual IP	Local	Local		
		Role IP	<ul> <li>Master</li> <li>10.2.42.155</li> </ul>	
		Members		
		Role	IP 10.2.42.156	0 9
		🖗 🌰 Master	10.2.42.155	
		LEAVE GROUP RE	MOVE GROUP CLOSE	

## Note Notice that out of the two members, one is a **Master** - the current device in use, and the other a **Slave**, the failover option for this server.

We have now completed the failover scenario as depicted in **Option A** of the diagram shown at the start of this section.

#### Option B - Creating a reciprocal failover Group with optional Load Balancing

To recreate **Option B** - adding a second **Failover Group** managed by **Log Receiver 2** with potential **Load Balancing** (should this be required) - the following additional tasks would be required given using our example scenario;

Login to the Manage web interface of Log Receiver 2, and navigate to the Node / Failover dashboard.

Select the '+ Create New Failover Group' button to enter the details of a second VIP Address and select the 'Add' button to save the changes.

Log back into the Manage web interface of the **Log Receiver 1** instance, and navigate to the **Node / Failover** dashboard to '**Join Existing Group**'. Select the '**Scan**' button to bring back the **VIP Address** entry, and select the '**Join**' button at the bottom of the dashboard to make the connection.

A dashboard similar to that below should follow, suggesting that there are two members in each Failover Group.

Failover Groups		
+ Create New Failover Group	Doin Existing Group	
Virtual IP	Land	Marshara
The second se	Local	Members
10.2.42.177	▲ 10.2.42.155	2

## Storage

The Storage section allows administrators to manage both local and attached storage. This includes direct and network-attached storage, used to extend the disk capacity for data applications such as Splunk and Tableau.

This will allow the volume of an existing system to be extended and the mount point for Splunk indexes may also be defined. This feature will also allow the capability to read files from network storage.

Номе	Node	NODE > Storage	> Block Device				
	System Time	Block Devir	ce Management				
	Name Network Ethernet	+ New Logica	al Volume 📀 New Software R/	AID			
	Bonding Port Redirect	Device	Mount Point	Size	Available	Usage Type	Encrypted
LICENSE	OS User	rootvg-lv01	/opt	193G	192G	1% LVM	No
>	FTP	sda1	<undefined></undefined>	1M		- System	No
	SSH	sda2	/	4G	2.16	50% System	No
SETTINGS	Failover	sda3	/tmp	26	2.0G	2% System	No
	Log Receiver	sda4	/var/log	512M	401M	22% System	No
	Storage ► Block Device	sda5	/var/log/audit	512M	465M	9% System	No
	NFS CIFS AWS S3 ISCSI						

#### Storage Devices

All detected attached storage is listed here giving the following opportunities:

- Create a RAID disk from multiple storage devices
- Create a new logical volume for grouping storage devices as one
- Merge storage devices with the existing logical volume to extend disk capacity, or mount it to a
  designated mount point.

Plan your storage use by considering future data growth and potential expansion. Some actions are not reversible, so good planning is essential before taking action.

#### Mount disk and mount points

New storage devices can be added as a user custom mount point under /opt/mnt/. The owner of this mount point is '**sbox**' and permission is open to all. You may choose to maintain owners and permissions of files and folders under this mount point yourself.

If this storage device is entirely for use with Splunk, you may choose to mount it to **/opt/splunk** directly, as shown below.

63	Node	+ New Logica	al Volume 🛛 🕂 New	Software RAID	Mount to File System - md127
		Device	Mount Point	Size Avail	Mount Point
номе		NewVG-NewLV	<undefined></undefined>	3G	
			<undefined></undefined>	4G	choose mount points below and till subdirectory if required.
NODE			/opt	96	/opt/splunk
Ŧ					/opt/mnt/ abc
LUSTER		sda1	<undefined></undefined>	1M	
		sda2	1	4G :	2
ICENSE		sda3	/tmp	2G ::	<sup>2</sup> Encryption
<b>\$</b>		sda4	/var/log	512M 4	This is a optional feature. You can enable encryption on this device by key with LUKS (Linux Unified Key Setup) algorithm.
		sda5	/var/log/audit	512M 4	
			<undefined></undefined>	16	No Yes
					Key Mount an encrypted device you have to provide key file
			<undefined></undefined>	16	mount un cine prece de nece poe nare co prome ney me.
			<undefined></undefined>	16	Create New Key File Creating new key file will force to re-format file system on drive. This will not be recoverable later, please make sure you understand the risk.
		sde	<undefined></undefined>	1G	• Use Existing Key File It will used the existing key file in system to re-mount device.
					Upload Key File
CCOUNT					MOUNT

Note

The custom path /opt/sbox/mount is deprecated and has been removed from selections. Existing mounts will continue without any impacts until unmounted.

#### **Encryption and Decryption**

Gemini Central supports disk encryption which has been simplified and implemented as an option while mounting disks. This is optional and disabled to all disks by default. You may encrypt a disk and mount it with a new key, or mount it with an existing key.

- **Create New Key File:** This will encrypt the disk with a new key file. All the data on this disk will be erased.
- Use Existing Key File: If the disk was encrypted from this machine, this allows the disk to be mounted again with the existing key.
- **Upload Key File:** If the disk was encrypted somewhere else, this allows the disk to be mounted again with a provided key file.

C]	Node	Storage			Mount to File System - md127
номе		Storage NFS	CIFS S3	ISCSI SWAP	Mount Point Choose mount points below and fill subdirectory if required.
NODE		+ New Logica	l Volume 🔸 New Mount Point	v Software RAID Size Availa	/opt/splunk
CLUSTER		NewVG-NewLV	<undefined></undefined>	3G	/opt/mnt/
			<undefined></undefined>	4G	
			/opt	20 9G 8	Encryption This is a optional feature. You can enable encryption on this device by key with LUKS
SETTINGS		sda1	<undefined></undefined>	1M	(Linux Unified Key Setup) algorithm.
		sda2	1	4G 2	NO TES
		sda3	/tmp	2G 2	<b>Key</b> Mount an encrypted device you have to provide key file.
		sda4	/var/log	512M 47	Create New Key File     Creation new key file will force to re-formet file custom on drive. This will not be
		sda5	/var/log/audit	512M 48	Constant of the second se
		sde	<undefined></undefined>	16	
					MOUNT CANCEL

Once mounted, you should create a backup of the encryption key file. This is highly recommended.

C3	Node	Storage			Device - sd	d
HOME	System Time	Storage NFS	CIFS S3	ISCSI SWAP	🛃 Downlo	ad Encryption Key File
=	Timezone	🕂 New Logical	l Volume 🛛 🕂 Ne	w Software RAID	Туре	Disk
NODE	Name	Device	Mount Point	Size Avail:	File System	xfs
Ŧ	OS Users	NewVG·NewLV	<undefined></undefined>	36	Used	33M
CLUSTER	FTP		and the state	10	Available	987M
	SSH		<undefined></undefined>	46	Usage	4%
LICENSE	SNMP		/opt	9 <b>G</b> 8	Cipher Suite	
*	Failover	sda1	<undefined></undefined>	1M	Key Size	1024
SETTINGS	Log Receiver	sda2	1	4G 2		
	Storage					
	Monitoring	sda3	/tmp	26 2		
	Diagnostics	sda4	/var/log	512M 47		
	Backup	sda5	/var/log/audit	512M 48		
	Benchmark		<undefined></undefined>	16		
			<undefined></undefined>	16		
			/opt/splunk	1022M 98		
ACCOUNT		sde	<undefined></undefined>	1G	UNMOUNT	CLOSE

	<ul> <li>An encrypted disk can not be used for creating a RAID disk or merging into a logical volume. Decrypt before any new allocation.</li> <li>Encrypting a logical volume is not supported.</li> </ul>
Notes	<ul> <li>Encryption with a new key followed by decryption will erase all data.</li> <li>A backup of the key file is highly recommended.</li> </ul>

#### Create Software RAID Disk

With RAID, you can group more than one storage device in a disk array to create redundancy or efficiency, depending on the RAID level chosen. Refer to this guide for more understanding about RAID and RAID levels: <u>https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/RAID</u>.

You should select the most appropriate RAID level for your use cases:

- **RAID 0(Striping)**: When disk redundancy doesn't matter, and cares about disk performance.
- **RAID 1(Mirroring)**: When there are only 2 disks, and data integrity / availability are important.
- **RAID 5:** When there are more than 3 disks, cares about data integrity and availability as well as the performance. This is balanced in performance, capacity, and availability.

C3	Node	Storage				Create New Software F	AID
номе	System Time	Storage	NFS CIFS	S3 ISCSI SWAP		RAID Level RAID 0 RAID 1 RAI	D 5
	Name	+ New Loo	gical volume	New Software RAID		Choose Physical Disk Device	
NODE	Notwork	Device	Mount Point	Size	Availabl	Device	Size
-		md127	/opt/splunk	4G	4.0	/dev/sdb	1G
CLUSTER	FTP		/opt	96	8.5	/dev/sdc	1G
	SSH					/dev/sdd	16
LICENSE	SNMP	sda1	<undefined></undefined>	1M			
a.	Failover	sda2	/	4G	2.2	/dev/sde	1G
SETTINGS	Log Receiver	sda3	/tmp	2G	2.0	/dev/sdi	3G
	Storage	eda4	lvarllan	512M	4771		
	Monitoring	3004	/vai/log	51214	4770		
	Diagnostics	sda5	/var/log/audit	512M	4821		
	Backup Benchmark		<undefined></undefined>	16			
			<undefined></undefined>	16			
			<undefined></undefined>	16			
ACCOUNT		sde	<undefined></undefined>	16		ADD CLOSE	

	• This is specifically to benefit instances that do not have a hardware RAID controller, e.g. VMware, Hyper-V, and AWS. Disk drives on Gemini Appliance are already supported and managed by a RAID controller.
Notes	<ul> <li>Merging a RAID disk into a logical volume is not supported.</li> </ul>
	• The size of each storage device can be different when selecting RAID 5, but this might create wasted disk space.
	<ul> <li>Mixing various storage types, e.g. SSD, HDD and iSCSI disks together in one RAID array is not recommended. It will slow down RAID disk performance and increase latency.</li> </ul>

#### Create a Logical Volume

The main advantage of a **logical volume** is the ability to extend disk space when required. More storage devices may be added into an existing logical volume at any time, to extend overall disk capacity.

C3	Node	Storage			Create New Logical Volume	
номе	System Time	Storage	NFS CIFS	S3 ISCSI SWAP	Volume Group NewVG	
NODE	Name	+ New Log	gical Volume	+ New Software RAID Size Availa	Logical Volume NewLV	
.T.	Network OS Users	md127	/opt/splunk	4G 4.	Choose Physical Disk Device	
	FTP SSH	rootvg-lv01	/opt	9G 8.	.5 dev/sdb 1G	
	SNMP Failover	sda2	/	4G 2.	/dev/sdc 16	
SETTINGS	Log Receiver Storage	sda3	/tmp	26 2.	vev/sdd 16	
	Monitoring Diagnostics	sda4	/var/log	512M 47	71 ✓ /dev/sdi 3G	
	Backup	sdb	<undefined></undefined>	16		
	Benchmark		<undefined></undefined>	16		
			<undefined></undefined>	16	ADD CLOSE	

	<ul> <li>A logical volume can be created with one or more storage devices.</li> <li>The size of each storage device can be different.</li> </ul>
Notes	<ul> <li>There is not a way to split storage devices from an existing logical volume, except by the entire removal of the logical volume. Plan storage devices carefully.</li> </ul>
	• The default logical volume rootvg-lv01 can not be removed.
	<ul> <li>Mixing various storage types, e.g. SSD, HDD and iSCSI disks together in one RAID array is not recommended. It will slow down RAID disk performance and increase latency.</li> </ul>

#### Merge Disk

Merge storage devices into a logical volume - You may select a target logical volume if more than one logical volume exists.

63	Node	+ New Logica	l Volume 🛛 🕂 Nev	v Software RAID		Merge into logical volume - /dev/sdb
		Device	Mount Point	Size	Availa	
номе	System Time	NewVG-NewLV	<undefined></undefined>	36		Are you sure to merge undefined storage device /dev/sdb into LVM? Note that the device cannot be removed once complete otherwise it would crash the system.
Ŧ	Timezone Name		/opt/splunk	4G	4	Logical Volume
	Network		/opt	9G	8	NewVG 🗸
	OS Users	sda1	<undefined></undefined>	1M		
	FTP SSH	sda2	1	4G	2	
LICENSE	SNMP	sda3	/tmp	2G	2	
<b>\$</b>	Failover	sda4	/var/log	512M	47	
	Storage	sda5	/var/log/audit	512M	48	
	Monitoring		<undefined></undefined>	1G		
	Diagnostics Backup		<undefined></undefined>	1G		
	Benchmark		<undefined></undefined>	1G		
		sde	<undefined></undefined>	16		
ACCOUNT						MERGE

• Once a storage device has been merged into the default logical volume "rootvg-lv01", this action will not be able to be reverted.

#### Notes

- When a device has been merged into a logical volume, it must keep attached unless the partition might be corrupted and data will be lost.
- Merging a RAID disk into a logical volume is not supported.
- Merging an encrypted disk into a logical volume is not supported.

#### Add an NFS Mount

To define an NFS Mount Point:

- Enter the local mount point (located at the /opt/sbox/data folder),
- Enter the IP address of the remote server
- Enter the **remote folder** (must start with a leading '*I*').
- Select the mount type. A '**Hard mount**' is recommended by Splunk when the mount point is used for cold buckets.
- Select the NFS version. This must match the NFS server version.
- Select the 'Add' button to add the new NFS mount.

Notes	A mount point will not be detected and validated until you enable the configuration by clicking the 'mount' button. Once enabled, Gemini Central will automatically mount the NFS Mount Point upon boot.
-------	---

63	Node	Storage	Add NFS Mount Point
номе		Undefined Storage Logical Volume Local Mount	Mount Point /opt/sbox/mount/ nfs
NODE		Add	temote server
CLUSTER			Remote Path /nfs-shares/gem01/
			Mount Type Soft Mount Hard Mount
			Version 3 3 4
SETTINGS			
ACCOUNT			ADD

#### Add a CIFS Mount

- To define a CIFS Mount Point:
- Enter the local mount point (located at /opt/sbox/data)
- Enter the **IP address** of the remote server
- Enter the **remote folder** (must start with a leading '*I*')
- Enter the **Username**
- Enter the **Password**
- Select the 'Add' button to add the new CIFS mount.

Please note that a mount point will not be detected and validated until you enable the configuration. When enabled, Gemini Central will automatically mount the CIFS Mount Point upon boot.

C3	Node	Storage	Add CIFS Mount Point
HOME		Undefined Storage Logical V	Mount Point
NODE		нт 	Remote Server 10.9.9.5
CLUSTER			Remote Path /smb-shares/gem01
LICENSE			Username spikadm
SPLUNK			Password
TADOOP			Domain hugedata
SETTINGS			
ACCOUNT			ADD CANCEL

#### Add an S3 Mount

To define an **Amazon S3** Mount Point:

- Enter the **S3 bucket name** you want to mount and the local mount point will locate at /opt/sbox/data/s3/<bucket name> folder.
- Enter the IAM Access Key ID
- Enter the IAM Secret Access Key
- If you want all the data stored in the S3 bucket to be encrypted, enable **Server-Side Encryption**(SSE), selecting a proper key option.

To obtain your S3 Access credentials, log in to your **AWS Console**, open the **Users** section in the **IAM Service** area and select the desired user.

Create an Access key in the Security credentials tab.

Please note that access to S3 storage requires a connection to the public internet from the node.

Note	S3 is designed for data archival and not applicable to Splunk indexing. Specifying hot/warm/cold buckets to an S3 mount mounts will cause Splunk to malfunction.		

<b>E</b> 3	Node	Storage	Add S3 Mount Point
НОМЕ		Undefined Storage Lo	gical V Bucket
_			icebox
NODE			Mount Point
NUDE			/opt/sbox/mount/s3/icebox
<b>T</b>			IAM Access Key ID
CLUSTER			ENFEFMKFNLEWAWDUJFDW
	SNMP		IAM Secret Access Key
LICENSE			iMY3/6WryCJxYUJdXThJaqxBTBECgYEA5x6/I
	Log Receiver		To get your S3 Access credentials, log in to the AWS Console, open the Users section in the IAM Service and click the desired user. Create an Access key in the Security credentials tab. Options
SPLUNK			Server-Side Encryption
			C Enable
			Key Option
HADOOP			Amazon S3-Managed Keys (SSE-S3)     AWS KMS-Managed Keys (SSE-KMS)
<b>1</b> 0			Customer-Provided Keys (SSE-C)
SETTINGS			
ACCOUNT			ADD

#### Add an iSCSI Target

To add an iSCSI target:

• Modify the **Initiator Settings** and specify the **Login CHAP** and **Discovery CHAP** details. These must match the settings exactly on the **iSCSI** target.

C]	Node	Storage	Initiator Settings
HOME		Undefined Storage Logical Volume Local Mount	ISCSI Initiator
Ŧ		🖉 Initiator Settings	Initiator Name iqn.2017-02.com.geminidata:b89e1cdfc60c
NODE		Target Discovery	Login CHAP
CLUSTER		No 1660 devices discussed the de-	Enable
			Username gemini
\$		No ISCS	Password
SETTINGS			Discovery CHAP
			Enable
			Username gemini
			Password
ACCOUNT			SAVE

- In the Target Discovery field, input the iSCSI target IP address and port, eg. 192.168.1.100:3260. Note the default discovery port is 3260/tcp.
- Once the iSCSI targets have been found, they will be listed.
- Select "Login" to connect to the iSCSI target.
- Once connected, there is a new block device detected and listed within the '**Undefined Storage**' area (see below)

C3	Node	Storage	
	System Time Timezone Name Network FTP SSH SNMP Failover Log Receiver	Undefined Storage Logical Volume Local Mount NFS CIFS S3 ISCSI Discovery 192.168.56.102.3260 Q Discovered Targets (2) IQN Iqn 2006-01.com openfiler:test.iscsi2 iqn 2006-01.com openfiler:test.iscsi34	Configure     Login     Login
SETTINGS	Storage Monitoring Diagnostics Backup Benchmark	Logged In (1) IQN Block Devices ign 2006-01.com.openfiler.tet.iscsi1 sdc	Logout
ACCOUNT		Target login successfully	×

• Select the 'Undefined Storage' tab and mount it from here.

Ask your **NAS Administrator** to obtain the **iSCSI target** information and CHAP credentials.

Please note that connected iSCSI target only means there are new block devices available. Do not forget to **mount** them in 'Undefined Storage'.

# Note Set MTU to a value larger than 1,500 to enable Jumbo Frames across the ethernet interface used for iSCSI connection. This will improve iSCSI performance. Consult your NAS vendor for more details.

#### Manage Swap space

**Swap space** is disabled by default on Gemini Central as this is optimal for performance but we stress *only* when there is enough physical RAM on the instance.

This setting generally has the most effect on an Appliance based instance.

Reasons for enabling the swap space could be;

- Useful for appliances with a particularly heavy load
- To prevent 'Out of Memory' (OOM) errors from occurring
- For Appliances that have a limited amount of RAM.
- Where the emphasis is more on reliability than performance.

Enable using the slider button, to allow for a specific SWAP file size to be entered. A value that is equal to or greater than the amount of physical RAM installed, is recommended.

C3			admin
НОМЕ	NODE > Storage > SWAP	Create SWAP	
=		SWAP File Size	
NODE	System Swan Control	4045580	
CLUSTER	System Swap Enable / Disable the system swap spaces.	Available space: 2011112KB	
LICENSE			
SETTINGS			
		CREATE	

## Log Forwarding

The local Linux **system** logs together with the **Gemini Central logs** are both stored in a safe place with restricted access. In order to access these more readily, add a **Log Forwarding** rule using the Log Forwarding dashboard. The destination for these logs could be local storage(this instance) or perhaps a Syslog server.

Rules can be set for either the Gemini Central logs or the local System logs. Use the appropriate '**+ Add Forwarding Rule**' button to enable the process.

To send the log file to a physical file on this instance;

- Enter a filename (eg. system\_file\_<instance>.log) to create a local readable log file which can be read by any OS user.
- Enable Log Rotation to prevent the file from growing too large and consuming all the disk space.

C3		admin
Номе	NODE > Log Forwarding	Add System Log Forwarding Rule
	Forward Manage Logs	Name SystemLogs
	There are no admin log forwardir	Destination Protocol       File     UDP       TCP
SPLUNK		Destination File & Path /opt/sbox/data/ system.log
SETTINGS	Forward System Logs	Log Rotate
	There are no system log forward	Frequency Daily Weekly Monthly Yearly
	Add Forw	Number of Copies 4
		Size 10
		Unit OKBytes OBytes
		Compress
		ADD CANCEL
To send the logs to a syslog server

• Select the Destination Protocol, UDP or TCP, and enter the IP address of your syslog server. The service defaults to port 514, which can be customized.



# Diagnostics

The **Diagnostics Panel** provides useful access to **network tools** without the need to access the command-line (CLI) interface.

The following commands can be executed with the resulting outputs shown below;

• PING

C3	Node	Diagnostics
Номе	System Time	Ping TCP Connect NSLOOKUP TRACEROUTE TCPDUMP
_	Timezone	Start to send ICMP ping packets PING 8.8.8.8 (8.8.8.8) 56(84) bytes of data.
<b>_</b>	Name	64 bytes from 8.8.8.8: icmp_seq=1 ttl=48 time=7.59 ms 64 bytes from 8.8.8.8: icmp_seq=2 ttl=48 time=7.62 ms
NODE	Network	64 bytes from 8.8.8.8: icmp_seq=3 ttl=48 time=7.57 ms 64 bytes from 8.8.8.8: icmp_seq=4 ttl=48 time=7.58 ms
T	FTP	64 bytes from 8.8.8.8: icmp_seq=5 ttl=48 time=7.65 ms 64 bytes from 8.8.8.8: icmp_seq=6 ttl=48 time=7.66 ms
CLUSTER	0011	64 bytes from 8.8.8.8: icmp_seq=7 ttl=48 time=7.63 ms 64 bytes from 8.8.8.8: icmp_seq=8 ttl=48 time=7.61 ms
	55H	64 bytes from 8.8.8.8: icmp_seq=9 ttl=48 time=7.62 ms 64 bytes from 8.8.8.8: icmp_seq=10 ttl=48 time=7.69 ms
	SNMP	64 bytes from 8.8.8.8: icmp_seq=11 ttl=48 time=7.62 ms
LICENSE	Failover	64 bytes from 8.8.8.8: icmp_seq=12 ttl=48 time=7.61 ms
	Log Receiver	64 bytes from 8.8.8.8: icmp_seq=14 ttl=48 time=7.62 ms 64 bytes from 8.8.8.8: icmp_seq=15 ttl=48 time=7.62 ms
>	Storage	64 bytes from 8.8.8.8: 1cmp_seq=16 ttl=48 time=7.81 ms 64 bytes from 8.8.8.8: icmp_seq=17 ttl=48 time=7.59 ms
SPLUNK	Monitoring	64 bytes from 8.8.8.8: icmp_seq=18 ttl=48 time=7.66 ms 64 bytes from 8.8.8.8: icmp_seq=19 ttl=48 time=7.65 ms
5	Monitoring	64 bytes from 8.8.8.8: icmp_seq=20 ttl=48 time=7.63 ms 64 bytes from 8.8.8.8: icmp_seq=21 ttl=48 time=7.66 ms
HADOOP	Diagnostics	64 bytes from 8.8.8.8: icmp_seq=22 ttl=48 time=7.61 ms 64 bytes from 8.8.8.8: icmp_seq=23 ttl=48 time=7.63 ms
		64 bytes from 8.8.8.8: icmp_seq=24 ttl=48 time=7.57 ms 64 bytes from 8.8.8.8: icmp_seq=25 ttl=48 time=7.63 ms
<b>A</b>		64 bytes from 8.8.8.8: icmp_seq=26 ttl=48 time=7.61 ms 64 bytes from 8.8.8.8: icmp_seq=27 ttl=48 time=7.60 ms
SETTINGS		
		STOP (ESC)
3		

TCP Connect



#### NSLOOKUP



• Traceroute



#### • TCP Dump

¢3	Node	Diagnostics
НОМЕ	System Time	Ping TCP Connect NSLOOKUP TRACEROUTE TCPDUMP
NODE	Timezone Name	Network Interface Any  the other of the other of the other of the other
.T.	Network FTP	Both ① TCP ② UDP  Hest Ontinent The source best ID address descriptory
	SSH SNMP	Dert
LICENSE	Failover Log Receiver	Optional. The destination port of localhost.
SPLUNK	Storage Monitoring	
HADOOP	Diagnostics	TEST
-		
ACCOUNT		
¢3	Node	Diagnostics
C]	Node System Time	Diagnostics Ping TCP Connect NSLOOKUP TRACEROUTE TCPDUMP
СІ	Node System Time Timezone	Diagnostics           Ping         TCP Connect         NSLOOKUP         TRACEROUTE         TCPDUMP           21:04:45.949821         IP 61.216.95.25.gprs-data > 172.31.42.136.https:         tcp 0           21:04:46.154590         IP 61.216.95.25.gprs-data > 172.31.42.136.https:         tcp 0           21:04:46.154590         IP 61.216.95.25.gprs-data > 172.31.42.136.https:         tcp 344
CI Home Home	Node System Time Timezone Name Network	Ping         TCP Connect         NSLOOKUP         TRACEROUTE         TCPDUMP           21:04:45.949821         IP 61.216.95.25.gprs-data > 172.31.42.136.https: tcp 0         12:04:46.171491         IP 172.31.42.136.https: tcp 0           21:04:46.171491         IP 172.31.42.136.https         51.216.95.25.gprs-data > 172.31.42.136.https: tcp 0         12:04:46.171491           21:04:46.171491         IP 172.31.42.136.https > 61.216.95.25.gprs-data:         tcp 304         12:04:46.336693           21:04:46.336693         IP 61.216.95.25.gprs-data > 172.31.42.136.https: tcp 0         12:04:46.336693         IP 61.216.95.25.gprs-data > 172.31.42.136.https: tcp 0           21:04:46.45.336637         IP 61.216.95.25.gprs-data > 172.31.42.136.https: tcp 0         12:04:46.1371491         IP 172.31.42.136.sttps: tcp 0
CT HOME HOME	Node System Time Timezone Name Network FTP SSH	Diagnostics           Ping         TCP Connect         NSLOOKUP         TRACEROUTE         TCPDUMP           21:04:45.949821         IP 61.216.95.25.gprs-data > 172.31.42.136.https: tcp 0         12:04:46.17491         1P 72.31.42.136.https: tcp 0           21:04:46.171491         IP 172.31.42.136.https > 61.216.95.25.gprs-data > 172.31.42.136.https: tcp 0         12:04:46.371491         1P 72.31.42.136.https > 61.216.95.25.gprs-data > 172.31.42.136.https: tcp 0           21:04:46.3366000         IP 61.216.95.25.gprs-data > 172.31.42.136.https: tcp 0         363         21:04:46.3366000         IP 61.216.95.25.gprs-data > 172.31.42.136.https: tcp 0           21:04:46.541397         IP 61.216.95.25.gprs-data > 172.31.42.136.https: tcp 0         12:04:46.558663         17.231.42.136.https > 61.216.95.25.gprs-data: tcp 383           21:04:46.558663         IP 17.31.42.136.https > 61.216.95.25.gprs-data : tcp 344         12:04:46.358664         172.31.42.136.https > 61.216.95.25.gprs-data: tcp 344           21:04:46.528664         IP 17.31.42.136.https > 61.216.95.25.gprs-data : tcp 344         12:04:46.722878         19 61.216.95.25.gprs-data > 172.31.42.136.https: tcp 0
CIUSTER	Node System Time Timezone Name Network FTP SSH SNMP	Ping         TCP Connect         NSLOOKUP         TRACEROUTE         TCPDUMP           21:04:45.3498211         1P 61.216.95.25.gprs-data > 172.31.42.136.https: tcp 0         21:04:46.154500         1P 61.216.95.25.gprs-data > 172.31.42.136.https: tcp 0           21:04:46.171491         1P 72.31.42.136.https > 61.216.95.25.gprs-data > 172.31.42.136.https: tcp 0         21:04:46.35690         1P 61.216.95.25.gprs-data > 172.31.42.136.https: tcp 0           21:04:46.356901         1P 17.31.42.136.https > 61.216.95.25.gprs-data > 172.31.42.136.https: tcp 0         21:04:46.356901         1P 17.231.42.136.https > 61.216.95.25.gprs-data > 172.31.42.136.https: tcp 0           21:04:46.536600         1P 172.31.42.136.https > 61.216.95.25.gprs-data > 172.31.42.136.https: tcp 0         21:04:46.536601         177.31.42.136.https > 61.216.95.25.gprs-data > 172.31.42.136.https: tcp 0           21:04:46.526067         1P 172.31.42.136.https > 61.216.95.25.gprs-data > 172.31.42.136.https > 12.31.42.136.https > 12.31.42.136.
	Node System Time Timezone Name Network FTP SSH SNMP Failover Log Receiver	Diagnostics           Ping         TCP Connect         NSLOOKUP         TRACEROUTE         TCPDUMP           21:64:45.949821         IP 61.216.95.25.gprs-data > 172.31.42.136.https: tcp 0         21:64:46.154580         IP 61.216.95.25.gprs-data > 172.31.42.136.https: tcp 0           21:64:46.174490         IP 61.216.95.25.gprs-data > 172.31.42.136.https: tcp 0         21:64:46.174490         IP 61.216.95.25.gprs-data > 172.31.42.136.https: tcp 0           21:64:46.36690         IP 61.216.95.25.gprs-data > 172.31.42.136.https: tcp 0         21:64:46.36690         IP 61.216.95.25.gprs-data > 172.31.42.136.https: tcp 0           21:64:46.36630         IP 61.216.95.25.gprs-data > 172.31.42.136.https: tcp 0         21:64:46.54397         IP 61.216.95.25.gprs-data > 172.31.42.136.https: tcp 0           21:64:46.54397         IP 61.216.95.25.gprs-data > 172.31.42.136.https: tcp 0         21:64:46.723049         IP 61.216.95.25.gprs-data > 172.31.42.136.https: tcp 0           21:64:46.723049         IP 61.216.95.25.gprs-data > 172.31.42.136.https: tcp 0         21:64:46.723049         IP 61.216.95.25.gprs-data > 172.31.42.136.https: tcp 0           21:64:46.723049         IP 61.216.95.25.gprs-data > 172.31.42.136.https: tcp 0         21:64:46.9458071         IP 172.31.42.136.https > 61.216.95.25.gprs-data : tcp 363           21:64:46.9458071         IP 172.31.42.136.https > 61.216.95.25.gprs-data : tcp 363         21:64:46.9458071         IP 172.31.42.136.https > 61.216.95.25.gprs-data : tcp 363
	Node System Time Timezone Name Network FTP SSH SNMP Failover Log Receiver Storage Monitoring	Diagnostics           Ping         TCP Connect         NSLOOKUP         TRACEROUTE         TCPDUMP           21:64:45.949821         IP 61.216.95.25.gprs-data > 172.31.42.136.https: tcp 0         21:64:45.949821         IP 61.216.95.25.gprs-data > 172.31.42.136.https: tcp 0           21:64:45.949821         IP 61.216.95.25.gprs-data > 172.31.42.136.https: tcp 0         21:64:46.174931         IP 72.31.42.136.https: 51.216.95.25.gprs-data > 172.31.42.136.https: tcp 0           21:64:46.336690         IP 61.216.95.25.gprs-data > 172.31.42.136.https: tcp 0         21:64:46.336690         IP 61.216.95.25.gprs-data > 172.31.42.136.https: tcp 0           21:64:46.336690         IP 61.216.95.25.gprs-data > 172.31.42.136.https: tcp 0         21:64:46.541397         IP 61.216.95.25.gprs-data > 172.31.42.136.https: tcp 0           21:64:46.558664         IP 72.31.42.136.https > 61.216.95.25.gprs-data : tcp 363         21:64:46.723649         IP 61.216.95.25.gprs-data > 172.31.42.136.https: tcp 0           21:64:46.945867         IP 61.216.95.25.gprs-data > 172.31.42.136.https: tcp 0         21:64:46.945868         IP 77.31.42.136.https > 61.216.95.25.gprs-data: tcp 363           21:64:46.945868         IP 77.31.42.136.https > 61.216.95.25.gprs-data : tcp 0         21:64:46.945868         IP 77.31.42.136.https > 61.216.95.25.gprs-data : tcp 363           21:64:46.945868         IP 77.31.42.136.https > 61.216.95.25.gprs-data : tcp 0         21:64:46.945868         IP 77.31.42.136.https > 61.216.95.25.gprs-data : tcp 344
	Node System Time Timezone Name Network FTP SSH SNMP Failover Log Receiver Storage Monitoring Diagnostics	Diagnostics           21:04:45.949821 IP 05.216 95.25 gprs-dota > 172.31.42.136.https: tcp 0           21:04:46.154500 IP 05.216 95.25 gprs-dota > 172.31.42.136.https: tcp 0           21:04:46.154500 IP 05.216.95.25 gprs-dota > 172.31.42.136.https: tcp 0           21:04:46.154500 IP 05.216.95.25 gprs-dota > 172.31.42.136.https: tcp 0           21:04:46.171491 IP 172.31.42.136.https > 01.216.95.25 gprs-dota: tcp 344           21:04:46.336090 IP 05.216.95.25 gprs-dota > 172.31.42.136.https: tcp 0           21:04:46.336090 IP 05.216.95.25 gprs-dota > 172.31.42.136.https: tcp 0           21:04:46.541397 IP 05.216.95.25 gprs-dota > 172.31.42.136.https: tcp 0           21:04:46.541397 IP 05.216.95.25 gprs-dota > 172.31.42.136.https: tcp 0           21:04:46.541397 IP 05.216.95.25 gprs-dota > 172.31.42.136.https: tcp 0           21:04:46.5408097 IP 05.216.95.25 gprs-dota > 172.31.42.136.https: tcp 0           21:04:46.928097 IP 05.216.95.25 gprs-dota > 172.31.42.136.https: tcp 0           21:04:46.945800 IP 172.31.42.136.https > 01.216.95.25 gprs-dota: tcp 344           21:04:46.945800 IP 172.31.42.136.https > 01.216.95.25 gprs-dota: tcp 344           21:04:46.945800 IP 172.31.42.136.https > 01.216.95.25 gprs-dota: tcp 937           21:04:47.150029 IP 05.216.95.25 gprs-dota > 172.31.42.136.https: tcp 0           21:04:47.150029 IP 05.216.95.25 gprs-dota > 172.31.42.136.https: tcp 0           21:04:47.150029 IP 05.216.95.25 gprs-dota > 172.31.42.136.https: tcp 0           21:04:47.150029 IP 05.21.26.95.25 gprs-d
CLUSTER HOME CLUSTER CLUSTER CLUSTER SPLUNK	Node System Time Timezone Name Network FTP SSH SNMP Fallover Log Receiver Storage Monitoring Diagnostics	Diagnostics           21:04:45.349821 IP 61.216.95.25.gprs-data > 172.31.42.136.https: tcp 0           21:04:46.349821 IP 61.216.95.25.gprs-data > 172.31.42.136.https: tcp 0           21:04:46.171491 IP 172.31.42.136.https > 61.216.95.25.gprs-data: tcp 344           21:04:46.349801 P 61.216.95.25.gprs-data > 172.31.42.136.https: tcp 0           21:04:46.371491 IP 172.31.42.136.https > 61.216.95.25.gprs-data: tcp 344           21:04:46.336000 IP 61.216.95.25.gprs-data > 172.31.42.136.https: tcp 0           21:04:46.541397 IP 61.216.95.25.gprs-data > 172.31.42.136.https: tcp 0           21:04:46.928097 IP 61.216.95.25.gprs-data > 172.31.42.136.https: tcp 0           21:04:46.928097 IP 61.216.95.25.gprs-data > 172.31.42.136.https: tcp 0           21:04:46.94587 II P 172.31.42.136.https > 61.216.95.25.gprs-data: tcp 363           21:04:47.750800 IP 172.31.42.136.https > 61.216.95.25.gprs-data > 172.31.42.136.https: tcp 0           21:04:47.750811 IP 172.31.42.136.https > 61.216.95.25.gprs-data: tcp 363           21:04:47.750811 IP 172.31.42.136.https > 61.216.95.25.gprs-data: tcp 363           21:04:47.750811 IP 172.31.42.136.https > 61.216.95.25.gprs-data: tcp 364           21:04:47.750811
CLUSTER LICENSE SPLUNK HADOOP	Node System Time Timezone Name Network FTP SSH SNMP Failover Log Receiver Storage Monitoring Diagnostics	Diagnostics           21:04:45.949821 IP 61.216.95.25.gprs-data > 172.31.42.136.https: tcp 0           21:04:46.154580 IP 61.216.95.25.gprs-data > 172.31.42.136.https: tcp 0           21:04:46.17480 IP 61.216.95.25.gprs-data > 172.31.42.136.https: tcp 0           21:04:46.17480 IP 61.216.95.25.gprs-data > 172.31.42.136.https: tcp 0           21:04:46.36680 IP 61.216.95.25.gprs-data > 172.31.42.136.https: tcp 0           21:04:46.36680 IP 61.216.95.25.gprs-data > 172.31.42.136.https: tcp 0           21:04:46.36680 IP 61.216.95.25.gprs-data > 172.31.42.136.https: tcp 0           21:04:46.536861 IP 172.31.42.136.https > 61.216.95.25.gprs-data: tcp 344           21:04:46.536861 IP 172.31.42.136.https > 61.216.95.25.gprs-data: tcp 344           21:04:46.953860 IP 61.216.95.25.gprs-data > 172.31.42.136.https: tcp 0           21:04:46.928097 IP 61.216.95.25.gprs-data > 172.31.42.136.https: tcp 0           21:04:46.945801 IP 172.31.42.136.https > 61.216.95.25.gprs-data: tcp 344           21:04:46.945801 IP 172.31.42.136.https > 61.216.95.25.gprs-data: tcp 344           21:04:46.945801 IP 172.31.42.136.https > 61.216.95.25.gprs-data: tcp 344           21:04:47.377801 IP 172.31.42.136.https > 61.216.95.25.gprs-data: tcp 344           21:04:47.947961 IP 61.216.95.25.gprs-data > 172.31.42.136.https: tcp 0           21:04:47.947961 IP 172.31.42.136.https > 61.216.95.25.gprs-data: tcp 344           21:04:47.947961 IP 172.31.42.136.https > 61.216.95.25.gprs-data: tcp 344           21:04:47.9477986 IP 172.31.42.136.http
CLUSTER LICENSE SPLUNK HADOOP	Node System Time Timezone Name Network FTP SSH SNMP Failover Log Receiver Storage Monitoring Diagnostics	Diagnostics           21:04:45.949821 IP 61.216.95.25.gprs-data > 172.31.42.136.https: tcp 0           21:04:45.949821 IP 61.216.95.25.gprs-data > 172.31.42.136.https: tcp 0           21:04:46.154580 IP 61.216.95.25.gprs-data > 172.31.42.136.https: tcp 0           21:04:46.171491 IP 172.31.42.136.https > 61.216.95.25.gprs-data: tcp 344           21:04:46.36580 IP 61.216.95.25.gprs-data > 172.31.42.136.https: tcp 0           21:04:46.36580 IP 61.216.95.25.gprs-data > 172.31.42.136.https: tcp 0           21:04:46.36581 IP 61.216.95.25.gprs-data > 172.31.42.136.https: tcp 0           21:04:46.541397 IP 61.216.95.25.gprs-data > 172.31.42.136.https: tcp 0           21:04:46.541397 IP 61.216.95.25.gprs-data > 172.31.42.136.https: tcp 0           21:04:46.948081 IP 172.31.42.136.https > 61.216.95.25.gprs-data: tcp 344           21:04:47.75841 IP 172.31.42.136.https > 61.216.95.25.gprs-data > 172.31.42.136.https: tcp 0           21:04:47.947981 IP 172.31.42.136.https > 61.216.95.25.gprs-data: tcp 344           21:04:47.947981 IP 172.31.42.136.https > 61.216.95.25.gprs-data > 172.31.42.136.https: tcp 0           21:04:47.947981 IP 172.31.42.136.https > 61.216.95.25.gprs-data > 172.31.42.136.https: tcp 0

#### • IOSTAT

C3	Node	Diagnostics
HOME	System Time	Ping TCP Connect NSLOOKUP TRACEROUTE TCPDUMP IOSTAT
NODE	Timezone Name Network FTP	Device DLVM O/dev/sda Interval
CLUSTER	SSH	Count 0
LICENSE		C Detail
SETTINGS	Log Receiver Storage Monitoring Diagnostics	TEST
	Backup Benchmark	
ACCOUNT		
C3	Node	Diagnostics
HOME		
TIONIE	System Time Timezone	Ping TCP Connect NSLOOKUP TRACEROUTE TCPDUMP IOSTAT
NODE	System Time Timezone Name Network	Ping         TCP Connect         NSLOGKUP         TRACERCUTE         TCPDUMP         IOSTAT           Linux 3.10.0-653.17.1.el7.x86_64         (gemini-270b586c)         02/21/2018         _x86_64_         (3 CPU)           02/21/2018         09:24:33 EM
	System Time Timezone Name Network FTP	Ping         TCP Connect         NSLOCKUP         TRACERCUTE         TCPDUMP         IOSTAT           Linux 3.10.0-693.17.1.el7.x86_64 (gemini-270b586c)         02/21/2018         _x86_64_         (3 CPU)           02/21/2018         09:24:33 EM
	System Time Timezone Name Network FTP SSH SNMP	Ping         TCP Connect         NSLOCKUP         TRACERCUTE         TCPDUMP         IOSTAT           Linux 3.10.0-693.17.1.el7.x86_64 (gemini-270b586c)         02/21/2018         _x86_64_         (3 CPU)           02/21/2018         09:24:33 EM
	System Time Timezone Name Network FTP SSH SNMP Failover Log Receiver	Ping         TCP Connect         NSLOKUP         TRACEROUTE         TCPDUMP         IOSTAT           Linux 3.10.0-693.17.1.el7.x86_64 (gemini-270b586c)         02/21/2018         _x86_64_         (3 CPU)           02/21/2018         09:24:33 EM         mexics         rrap/s         wrap/s         r/s         w/s         rMB/s         wMB/s         avait r_avait w avait svctm % UL11           ada         0.00         0.03         617.72         155.73         2.43         0.75         8.41         0.79         1.01         1.13         0.56         0.06         4.54           02/21/2018         09:24:34 EM         mexics         rrap/s         wrap/s         r/s         w/s         rMB/s         wMB/s avgrq-sz avgqp-sz         avait r_avait w avait svctm % UL11           ada         0.00         0.00         0.00         0.00         1.00         1.50         1.50         0.50           02/21/2018         09:24:35 EM         mexa         0.00         0.00         0.00         1.00         1.50         1.50         0.50           02/21/2018         09:24:35 EM         mem/s         m/s         r/MB/s         wMB/s avgrq-sz avgqu-sz         avait r_avait w avait svctm % UL11           ada         0.00         0.00
	System Time Timezone Name Network FTP SSH SNMP Failover Log Receiver Storage Monitoring	Ping         TCP Connect         NSLOCUP         TRACERCUTE         TCPDUMP         IDSTAT           Linux 3.10.0-693.17.1.el7.x86_64         (gemini-270b586c)         02/21/2018         _x86_64_         (3 CPU)           02/21/2018         09:24:33 EM         mexic:         rrap/s         wrap/s         r/s         w/s         rMB/s         MME/s avgrq-sz avgqp-sz         await r_await waxit wuti avctm %util           ada         0.00         0.03         617.72         155.73         2.43         ME/s avgrq-sz avgqp-sz         await r_await waxit wuti avctm %util           ada         0.00         0.03         617.72         155.73         2.43         ME/s avgrq-sz avgqp-sz         await r_await waxit wuti avctm %util           ada         0.00         0.03         617.72         155.73         2.43         ME/s avgrq-sz avgqp-sz         await r_await waxit wuti avctm %util           gda         0.00         0.00         0.00         0.00         1.00         1.50         1.50         0.50           02/21/2018         09:24:35 PM         wrap/s         r/s         w/s         rMB/s         avgrq-sz avgqp-sz         await r_await wuti avctm %util           02/21/2018         09:24:35 PM         wrap/s         r/s         w/s         rME/s         wrap-s
	System Time Timezone Name Network FTP SSH SNMP Fallover Log Receiver Storage Monitoring Diagnostics	Ping         TCP Connect         NSLOKUP         TRACEROUTE         TCPDUMP         IDSTAT           Linux 3.10.0-693.17.1.el7.x86_64 (gemini-270b586c)         02/21/2018         _x86_64_         (3 CPU)           02/21/2018         09:24:33 EM         rrgm/s         rr/s         w/gs         rMB/s         MMB/s avgrq-sz avgqp-sz         await r_await waxit waxit wuti avctm %util           ada         0.00         0.03         617.72         155.73         2.43         MMB/s avgrq-sz avgqp-sz         await r_await waxit wuti avctm %util           ada         0.00         0.03         617.72         155.73         2.43         MMB/s avgrq-sz avgqp-sz         await r_await waxit wuti avctm %util           ada         0.00         0.00         0.00         0.00         4.00         0.00         1.50         0.50         0.50           02/21/2018         09:24:36 EM         wrgm/s         r/s         w/s         rMB/s         wMB/s avgrq-sz avgqp-sz         await r_await waxit wuti avctm %util         avctm %util           cd/21/2018         09:24:36 EM         wrgm/s         r/s         w/s         rMB/s         wdm/s avgrq-sz avgqp-sz         await r_await waxit wortm %util         avctm %util           cd/21/2018         09:24:36 EM         wrgm/s         r/s         w/s
	System Time Timezone Name Network FTP SSH SNMP Failover Log Receiver Storage Monitoring Diagnostics Backup Benchmark	Ping         TCP Connect         NSLOKUP         TRACEROUTE         TCPDUMP         IDSTAT           Linux 3.10.0-653.17.1.el7.x86_64         (gemini-270b586c)         02/21/2018         _x86_64         (3 CPU)           02/21/2018         09:24:33 EM         rrmp/s         rrmp/s         r/s         w/ms/s         NME/s         swmit r_await waxit waxi
	System Time Timezone Name Network FTP SSH SNMP Fallover Log Receiver Storage Monitoring Diagnostics Backup Benchmark	Ping         TCP Connect         NSLOKUP         TRACEROUTE         TCPDUMP         IDSTAT           Linux 3.10.0-693.17.1.el7.x86_64 (gemini-270b586c)         02/21/2018         _x86_64         (3 CPU)           02/21/2018         09:24:33 EM         rrgm/s         rr/s         w/gs         rMB/s         MMB/s avgrq-sz avgqp-sz         avait r_avait w avait watt watt         avait r_avait w avait watt         avait r_avait watt watt         avait r_avait watt watt         avait r_avait watt watt
	System Time Timezone Name Network FTP SSH SNMP Failover Log Receiver Storage Monitoring Diagnostics Backup Benchmark	Ping         TCP Connect         NSLOKUP         TRACERCUTE         TCPDUMP         IDSTAT           Linux 3.10.0-693.17.1.el7.x86_64 (gemini-270b586c)         02/21/2018         _x86_64         (3 CPU)           02/21/2018         09:24:33 EM         rrmp/s         rr/m         w/m/s         xMB/s         sMB/s avgrq-sz avgqp-sz         await r_await waxit waxit wtill         avctm         hull           ada         0.00         0.03         617.72         155.73         2.43         ME/s avgrq-sz avgqp-sz         await r_await waxit wuti wuti wuti wuti wuti wuti wuti wu

## **Rsync Backup**

There are many modern network-attached storage devices that now support backup using **rsync**. With this feature you can backup Splunk configurations and data in the /opt/sbox folder, to the remote storage regularly.

To enable rsync backup, you need to do the following:

- 1. Complete the SSH key exchange process between Gemini Central and the remote server, and allow this remote server use SSH login using a public key.
  - Select 'Download SSH Public Key' to download the SSH public key from Manage. The default file name should be id\_rsa.pub.
  - Add this public key into the authorized list of the remote server, usually located at ~/.ssh/authorized\_keys. For your convenience, use the following command to add it into the authorized list on the remote server:

cat id\_rsa.pub >> ~/.ssh/authorized\_keys

- 2. Configure remote server information. There are four field values required:
  - Remote Hostname/IP.
  - **Remote Port** The SSH listening port on the remote server. Default 22/tcp.
  - **Destination Path** The folder name the backup data will be sent to.
  - User Name Should match the one used for creation of the SSH public key.

C3	Node	Backup Rsync
HOME	System Time	🕙 Download SSH Public Key
	Name Network	Backup Configuration Through Rsync Download SSH public key and add it to remote server's ~/ ssH/authorized_keys file for connecting without password. Complete configurations for concerting to promote server's and then then effect on topole button to each be backing up
CLUSTER		Complete company below settings for connecting to remote server and then then once on oggie botton to enable backing up.
LICENSE	SNMP Failover	Setting Remote Hostname/IP
SETTINGS	Log Receiver Storage	Remote Port
	Diagnostics Backup	Destination Path nas_backup/ User Name
	Benchmark	backup
		Backup Scope Splunk Configuration Jopt/sbox
ACCOUNT		Backup Plan

 Determine the backup scope. There are two options available here: Splunk Configuration and folders in /opt/sbox. Within the /opt/sbox/ option, you can specify which folders would you like to backup.

- 4. Configure the backup plan. In this section you need to determine the backup strategy, including the policy and schedule required:
  - If you select '**Always create a new full copy**', disk space may be quickly consumed. Monitor the free disk space of the remote server regularly.
  - If you select '**Keep a single copy up-to-date**', then there will only be one copy that exists, which should be the latest. However, you will not be able to restore data from older copies.



5. Select the '**Save**' button, to commit the configuration.

Select the 'Backup Configuration Through Rsync' toggle button to enable rsync backup. This
will verify for a successful exchange of the public key and also add it to the authorized key list of
the remote server.

## Benchmark

Use this feature to evaluate if the hardware specifications are suitable in taking on the role of running intensive disk I/O tasks, eg. Splunk Indexer.

Here you can run a Disk Benchmark on specific devices, monitor the disk IOPS(Input and Output Operations Per Second) in real time, and download the results. The following detailed benchmark methodology link can be found in the Gemini Support Portal.

https://support.geminidata.com/learn/article/benchmarking-methodology/

How to complete a disk benchmark:

- Select '+ Run Benchmark' and choose the target device to benchmark from the 'Select Device' drop-down panel.
- Read the 'Notes' provided with care before you proceed with the 'Run Benchmark' button.

**Note:** When initiated, there is no way to cancel or stop the benchmark test.

C]	Node	Disk Benchmark	Disk Benchmark
номе		Run Benchmark	Select Device
_		You can run disk benchmark on specific devices, monitor the disk IC methodology is available in the Gemini Support Portal.	/opt (dm-0)
NODE		Current:	Note
æ		N/A IOPS	<ul> <li>Disk benchmark will try to drain all of the system resources including CPU and Disk I/O. The system will</li> </ul>
CLUSTER		Timestamp Devic	slow down, Manager and applications like Splunk might be not responsive during benchmarking.
		2018-02-22 13:10:19 +0800 dm-0	Avoid to benchmark on an production environment.
LICENSE			Running disk benchmark on an production environment may cause system unstable.
SETTINGS			<ul> <li>Disk benchmark requires dozens of GB disk spaces. If available disk space is low, the benchmark process will for</li> </ul>
			<ul> <li>Each benchmark job will run 5 times and take about 10</li> </ul>
			minutes. During benchmarking, no more benchmark jobs are allowed.
			Please close the running applications and stop the
			services for more accurate benchmark results.
ACCOUNT			RUN BENCHMARK CANCEL

• During the benchmark process, it will monitor the operating system and display the IOPS in real-time. It will also record the max IOPS on screen.



• When the benchmark test has been completed, you will be given the result as an average value. This can be downloaded for deeper analysis.

C3	Node	Disk Benchmark		
HOME NODE		Run Benchmark Vou can run disk benchmark on specific devi methodology is available in the Gemini Suppo Current:     N/A IOPS Timestamp	ces, monitor the disk IOPS in real time, and down ort Portal. Maximum: N/A in Device Name	nload the result. The detailed benchmark OPS Avg IOPS
		2018-02-22 13:10:19 +0800	dm-0	Download Delete
COUNT		1 Disk benchmark testing finished.		

# Cluster

The Gemini **Cluster** tab is the starting point for managing individual groups of Gemini Central nodes. This might include small groups for **High Availability**, **Failover** or instances that require collective **jobs** to be executed.

Cluster group registration is completed from the central Management Center instance operating as a 'Parent' node which registers nodes directly as 'Child nodes'.





## Manage Nodes

The **Manage Nodes** dashboard of the Parent node, ie. the **Management Center** for example, is the central location for the enhanced monitoring functionality of Gemini Central.

As suggested, this is particularly of use at the **Management Center** instance, as represented in the example below;

Note	This dashboard was previously known as the 'Topology' dashboard in Gemini
NOLE	Central versions prior to 2.8.

CLUSTER > Manage Nodes				
😮 Reload				
Beauto co tito Beauto do tito	minidak.com       minidak.com <t< th=""><th></th><th></th><th></th></t<>			
Add Node				
Manage Nodes				
Hostname	IP Aédress	Node Type	Joined Node Group	Assigned Jobs
gemini-beta monage-centre		Management Center	1	0
splani-on geminklata.com	10.1.5.193	Gemini Agent		
spunkide-01.perninidata.com	10.1.5.190	Gemini Agent		

With this dashboard it is now possible for the **Management Center** to show the status of *all* your Gemini instances whether they be appliances, cloud-based instances, virtual nodes, or even remote Splunk clusters (using Gemini Agents).

This dashboard will show the status of each 'Child' node registered to the Management Center and will include important metrics like CPU, RAM and disk space all measured at one-minute intervals.

If the **Bulk Provision** method was used to create multiple instances, this feature will be created automatically with the Management Center as Parent of the cluster instances.

The example below represents one such instance from the dashboard. Hover over the instance icon with your mouse to see the details panel presented to the right.

	gemini-2785f16b		
aomini 3785/16h	IP	127.0.0.1	
gernin-2785176b	CPU Cores	2	
	CPU Percent	0%	
	Memory Usage	555MB	
	Memory Total	1998MB	
	Memory Percent	35.4%	
	Disk Usage	2690MB	
	Disk Total	16343MB	

The circular icon consists of a central roundel that differs to represent the instance type, surrounded by three coloured circles. Each circle gives an immediate representation of a key metric.



- **Blue** outside circle = Disk Space (% used)
- **Orange** circle = RAM usage (% used)
- **Red** inner circle = CPU usage (% used)

Identification of the instance type can be determined by the inner roundel;



#### Adding instances to an existing Manage Group

The addition of other Gemini nodes into an existing **Manage Group**, must be achieved from the '**Parent**' node. A parent node is the main control node for each unique Gemini Group. The most common parent node is the **Management Center**.

To add another instance to the parent cluster, whether it be an appliance, instance or remote agent, use the '**Add Node**' button on the **Cluster / Manage Nodes** dashboard.

Enter the **IP address** of **Hostname** of the instance, and select the '**ADD NODE**' button to confirm.

CLUSTER > Manage Nodes	Add Node
Select Node Group	IP or Hostname of Node 10.2.70.134
gemini-manager gemini-002 gemini-004 gemini-007 gemini-003 gemini-005 gemini-006 gemini-syslog1 gemini-syslog2	
Add Node	ADD NODE CANCEL

## Manage Groups

**Manage Groups** enables the creation of smaller sub-groups of instances. This could be for reasons that include:

- Two standalone Gemini Log Receiver instances that are required to work together in a Failover Group or perform Load Balancing for Syslog.
- A group of instances that require a common 'Job' to be scheduled or completed

The creation of a **Manage Group** can only be completed from the '**Parent**' node. The Management Center is the ultimate parent node, and can be used to create a **Manage Group** from any of the instances within its cluster.

Use the '+ Create Node Group' button to open the Create Node Group panel (see below), and enter the appropriate details.

The **Node Group** in the example below is called **SyslogGroup**, and consists of gemini-syslog1 & gemini-syslog2.

CLUSTER > Manage Groups	Create Node Group
Node Groups	Joba can be dispatched to node groups only. Create a group and add a node to the group before assign jobs to it. Note that the child node can be added to multiple groups.
There are no groups currently configured.	SyslogGroup
Create Node Group	Description Two Syslog Servers that will be operating in <u>failower</u> mode to provide <u>Syslog</u> services to our network <i>M</i>
	Members gemini-systog1 × gemini-systog2 ×
	ADD CANCEL

Select the 'Add' button at the bottom of the dashboard to create the Node Group. The confirmation screen should resemble that below.

CLUSTER > Manage	e Groups			
Node Groups				
+ Create Node (	Group			
Group Name	Description	Members	Jobs	
SyslogGroup	Two Syslog Servers that will be operating in failover mode to provide syslog services to our network	2	0	:

## Execute Jobs

The **Execute Jobs** dashboard allows you to execute predefined 'Jobs' such as starting/stopping or enabling services for multiple Manage instances.

It also allows the viewing of the current status of a Job, and any associated report detail.

Jobs can be assigned to all nodes or to a previously defined **Node Group**, and executed at a specific time.

Select the '+ Create Job' button to add or create a new Job.

C3	Cluster	Execute J	Execute Jobs				
HOME	Тороlоду	+ Create Jo	b				
	Manage Nodes	Subject	Node Group	Task	Status		
<b>_</b>	Manage Groups	test	ALL NODES	Get component's version info	Reported	8	
NODE		test2	ALL NODES	Get system hardware information	Reported	$\otimes$	
CLUSTER	Membership Settings						

Select the Job itself from the tabular list to learn more details regarding the Job. Each Job has various states in which it can reside; Dispatched, Received, Fail, or Finished (successful).

←	Execute Jobs - Replicate Syslog Settings							
(	Remove							
	Subject         Replicate Syslog Settings           Description         Replication Log Receiver rule to cluster nodes			Status Created At	Finished 2020-06-11 13:30:41			
	Task Node Group	(2201) Replicate Syslog Settings. syslogServers		Received At Finished At	- 2020-06-11 13:31:18			
	Disnatches							
	Diopatonioo							
I	Node		Status		Last Updated			
	gemini-syslog1		Finished		2020-06-11 13:30:44			
	gemini-syslog2		Finished		2020-06-11 13:31:18			

## Backup Center

This feature is designed to leverage the Gemini **Management Center** as a central repository for the storage of essential Gemini and Splunk configuration files. It will only work from a 'Parent' node, such as the Management Center.

Dackup Gelilei					
Backup Job Manager					
This will help you to backup	o the current Splunk and Manage conf	figurations from a target node	group. You may specify th	ne scope, interval, copies, a	nd execution time for
backup job.					
Also, you may restore any c	one of the backups to a target node in	the Gemini Cluster when nee	ded.		
+ Add Backup Job					
Add Backup Job Name	Description	Node Group	Interval	Status	
Add Backup Job Name Backup_All_Instances	Description	Node Group allnodes	Interval	Status	
Add Backup Job Name Backup_All_Instances	Description	Node Group allnodes	Interval	Status	Edit
Add Backup Job Name Backup_All_Instances	Description	Node Group allnodes	Interval	Status Success	Edit Schedule

Prior to creating a Backup Job, consider creating smaller groups of nodes for backup purposes, such as Indexers, Heavy Forwarders and Log Receivers. To create a Node Group, select the '+Create Node Group' button from the Cluster / Manage Groups dashboard and add the desired instances to the group.

HOME	CLUSTER > Manage Groups				
>					
SPLUNK	Node Groups				
LOG	+ Create Node Group				
<b>—</b>	Group Name	Description	Members	Jobs	
NODE	Group Name SyslogNG_Server_Group	Description two syslog-ng servers that will operate in a failover group	Members 2	Jobs 0	:
	Group Name SyslogNG_Server_Group allnodes	Description two syslog-ng servers that will operate in a failover group Group created for a Global Backup or update job	Members 2 9	Jobs 0 0	:
	Group Name SyslogNG_Server_Group allnodes Splunkindexers	Description           two syslog-ng servers that will operate in a failover group           Group created for a Global Backup or update job           All Splunk Indexers including the CM	Members 2 9 3	Jobs 0 0	:

To create either a one-off or scheduled backup, use the '**+ Add Backup Job**' button on the **Cluster** / **Backup Center** dashboard to reveal the following options;

#### Add Backup Job

Splutik_II	ndexers		
Description	1		
All Splun	k Indexers	inc the CM	
Node Group	þ		
SplunkInd	dexers		~
Scope			
Both	<ul> <li>Splunk</li> </ul>	Manage	
Interval			
🔘 Daily	<ul> <li>Weekly</li> </ul>	O Monthly	Run Immediately
Schedule T	ime		
00:00			
Copies			
7			٢

- Enter a logical name for the Job, ie. Splunk\_Indexers
- Enter a description of the Job
- Use the Node Group dropdown menu to select the relevant group. If you do not find a suitable group here refer to the last paragraph on how to create a Manage Group.
- Use the **Scope** to specifically include either **Gemini** or **Splunk** configuration files, or have them backed up together within different directories of the same zip file.
- Use the Interval option to ensure that a regular backup is taken, based on the 'Schedule Time' and the maximum number of 'Copies' that are required to be kept.
- There is also an option here to complete a one-off backup in the form of the 'Run Immediately' option.

Select the 'ADD' button to commit this Job to run.

Once the Job is saved, locate the vertical ellipsis menu on the Backup Center dashboard to Edit or Remove any of the Jobs listed.

#### Backup Job Detail

To find more detail regarding a backup job, select the backup job itself from the **Backup Center** dashboard, to reveal the **Execution History** panel. Alongside each Job the vertical ellipsis menu will offer the ability to view '**Detail**' of the backup job, and the ability to '**Download**' the actual backup zip file.

#### **Restoring Backups**

To 'restore' a backup that has been completed, select the appropriate backup Job from the **Backup Center** dashboard to reveal an **Execution History** panel.

#### Backup Job - Backup\_All\_Instances

← Back to The Job Index					
<b>Execution History</b>					
Start (UTC)	End (UTC)	Status	Message		
2020-11-25 10:19:48	2020-11-25 10:21:32	Success	Complete running job through ansible, play	book=backup	<b>!</b>
					Detail
					Restore
Restore Jobs					Download
Start (UTC)	End (UTC)		Target	Status	Message
2020-11-25 10:22:37	2020-11-25 10:23:2	2	172.27.14.171	Success	

From the vertical ellipsis menu to the right of the relevant Job locate the '**Restore**' option. This will reveal the option to select the Gemini instance that is required to be restored.

Restore from Backup File	
Nodes	
172.27.14.134	~

Choose the Node to be restored from the drop-down list. If the '**both**' option was used to backup both the Gemini and Splunk configuration files, then both will be restored after confirming with the '**OK**' button.

For the ability to select either a Splunk or a Gemini restoration, we recommend the use of the Manage Group feature to create and split more backup jobs appropriately.

### Membership Settings

The **Membership Settings** feature allows you to enable and configure Parent/Child relationships between Manage nodes.

If the **Bulk Provision** method was used to create multiple instances, relationships will automatically have been created with the Management Center as the **Parent** of all other '**Child**' node instances.

CLUSIER > Mem	bership Settings		
🔃 Reset Node	e Settings		
Node Identifier			
29a7a702-f6a6-4	1996-a01d-d0007e91ecef		
Hostname			
gemini-manager			
Join Cluster Accept another Manage No Yes	ge Node add this node to its cluster.		
White List IP Only hosts listed below Leave empty to deny a	v will be allowed to add local node into III, or use a wildcard (*) to allow all ho: be comma separated.	cluster. sts.	
Multiple entries must l			

### **Bulk Provision**

This option has been detailed earlier in the Admin Guide. This will invoke the step-by-step **Bulk Provisioning** wizard to guide you through the provisioning of multiple nodes.

The node that initiates this process will become the Parent node and Licence Server for any instances provisioned.

Refer to the **Bulk Provisioning** section for detailed configuration steps.

# License

# Understanding Gemini Central Licensing

The **License** tab allows you to configure your Gemini Central Licenses, nominate License Servers and attach License Agents.

The Manage software license can be in one of three states;

- 1. A **Trial License** (30 Days)
- 2. A valid Enterprise License
- 3. A Free License (restricted features)

Changes to licensing can be completed at the Manage web interface at any time. A valid Enterprise License should be added within 30 days of Trial License activation.

Note The Trial License will convert to the Free (restricted) license if not converted to an Enterprise License during the trial license period.

Initiating a Gemini license for your Manage environment can be achieved;

1. During the **Bulk Provision** process of Manage.

Select the **'Enterprise Edition (Purchased License)**' option, when the licensing prompt appears and follow the instructions titled **'Generate a License Request**'.

On receipt of the **License file**, it can be installed at any time within a 30 day period using the web interface.

2. Using the Manage web interface

Login to the Gemini Central web interface at any time to request an Enterprise License.

Navigate to the **License / License Status** menu, and follow the on-screen instructions starting with '**Step 1 - Generate a License Request**'.

## License Status

**License Status** presents the current active license, including; the type, volume (number of nodes), and expiration date. Select the **Product** listed in the **Active License** panel to display more detail on the license.

C3	Manage License	License Status	
	License Status Remote Licenses Inventory License Server	Active License Product <u>Gemini Appliance Enterprise Trial</u> Expires 2017-05-19 00:02-07 Volume 1	Upgrade to Enterprise Edition for unvesticited Features and unimited nodes.
CLUSTER		Step 1 - Generate a license Request Click on Download Request below to create a request file on your machine that contains identifying information needed for license issuance. Step 2 - Submit Request to receive License File	Download Request
		Create a Support Tricks on the Gernin's Support tails and attach the request file from Step 1 above. Proceedings of the Step 1 above. The	Apply License File

If you need to request a License File, follow the steps on the License Status page to request and attach your License File in a three-step process. This ideally should be achieved within 30 days of installation.

If the **Trial** license is converted to an Enterprise License *after* the 30 day period, all slave nodes will remain at **Free** license status. All slave instances will function correctly in this state, but if you wish to correct the visible status on the dashboard, or if you wish to install another Featured Platform, you must restart Enterprise Services on all Slave nodes by running the following CLI command as the SBOX User:

sbox service --restart

## **Remote Licenses**

The **Remote Licenses** dashboard enables you to link to a known Manage License Server.

Use the '**Add License Server**' button to enter the credentials of a Gemini Central instance that contains a valid **Trial** or **Enterprise** license.

Add Remote License Server	Enter the IP address or FQDN of the chosen License Server in the Host entry box.
Host 10.2.70.57 Token String	Enter the <b>Token String</b> value located on the <b>License / License Server</b> dashboard of the chosen License Server.
gemini123 Weight 4 3	Enter a ' <b>Weight</b> ' value if you have two License Server destinations present, to determine which has the higher priority.

When connected successfully, a checkmark should be visible in both the '**Connected**' and '**Authenticated**' columns. Use the '**Refresh & Verify**' button if you have just set up this connection.

Authenticated
~
~

#### Inventory

The **Inventory** dashboard will list all the licenses present as **Active** or **Inactive**. It also allows you to Revoke the Trial license when an Enterprise License has been installed.

LICENSE > Inventory				
Active Licenses				
1 Upload License File	🛃 Download License Request	🛃 Revoke Trial License		
Product	Upload Time		Expiration	Volume
Gemini Manage Trial	2020-07-28 07	7:35:49	2020-08-27 07:35:49	1

If for any reason the **License Inventory** is incorrect, perhaps following the application of a new Enterprise License for example, it may be necessary to restart Enterprise Services on the Slave nodes by running the following CLI command as the SBOX User:

sbox service --restart

## License Server

The License Server dashboard allows you to enable and configure this Gemini Central instance as a Manage License Server.

A Manage License Server can manage both **Trial** and **Enterprise** licenses, granting permissions to other nodes connected to this instance.

#### LICENSE > License Server

Ilow Remote Access Ilows another appliance to use this appliance as a license server.  No Yes oken String he security token another appliance needs to enter to access this license server. gemini123 /hite List u could use wildcard * as any character for remote IP address, one line for one rule.	Licens	e Serve	r Settings	
No         Yes           Foken String	Allow Remot	e Access	use this appliance as	a license server
Token String The security token another appliance needs to enter to access this license server. gemini123 White List Ou could use wildcard * as any character for remote IP address, one line for one rule.	No	Yes		
gemini123 White List You could use wildcard * as any character for remote IP address, one line for one rule.	<b>Token String</b> The security to	oken another	appliance needs to ent	ter to access this license server.
White List /ou could use wildcard * as any character for remote IP address, one line for one rule.	gemini123			
	White List You could use	wildcard * as	any character for rem	note IP address, one line for one rule.

To use this instance as a Manage License Server, ensure that you '**Allow Remote Access**' by selecting the '**Yes**' tab.

Configure a suitable **Token String** that will be used by all remote nodes for registration.

Simply use an asterix ( \* ) to allow all Manage instances to connect.

Or, if required, restrict nodes allowed to register by creating a '**White List**' controlled by either IP address or Hostname (multiple entries must be separated by a comma).

# Splunk

The **Splunk** tab contains various areas of management related to the local Splunk platform installation. It will allow you to perform common tasks that would otherwise require access to the Splunk web interface or terminal screen.

Note that some of the functions here may not be suitable if the instance forms part of a Splunk cluster ie. **Upgrade Splunk(Daemon** dashboard) is achieved centrally using the **Rolling Upgrade** feature, and the editing of conf files (**Config Editor**) may be better suited to the function of Deployment Server.

New Feature: New to Central 3.0 is an AWS Provisioning tool for Splunk clusters.



**AWS Provisioning**, enables central provisioning of complete Splunk Indexer and Search Head clusters based on **Splunk AMI's** and **AWS EC2 instances**. This is a departure from the use of our hardened OS, but will enable customers to get up and running quickly with complex Splunk environments on **AWS** in just a few minutes. This comes with the added benefit of Gemini Central offering central observation and a fast Splunk upgrade facility.

# AWS Provisioning

#### Prerequisites for AWS Provisioning

In order to successfully complete the AWS Provisioning process, you will need access to valid **AWS** credentials for your environment such as the **AWS\_IAM\_ACCESS\_ID** and **AWS\_IAM\_SECRET\_KEY**. It may also be helpful to have access to the **AWS EC2** web console to review instances created.

#### **AWS Provisioning Procedure**

AWS Provisioning enables central provisioning of complete Splunk Indexer and Search Head clusters based on Splunk AMI's and AWS EC2 instances. A Gemini Agent will be automatically added to each instance during the process to give the added benefit of central observation and a speedy Splunk upgrade facility.

To instigate AWS provisioning to provide Splunk cluster resources, follow the procedure below;

**Step 1.0** From Gemini Central's **Home** dashboard , select the '**Activate**' button from the Splunk Featured Platform, if not already activated, to reveal the Splunk Icon at the vertical menu bar.

**Step 2.0** Select the **Splunk** icon to reveal a new addition to the menu. Select the '**AWS Provision**' option to open and begin the AWS provisioning process.

**Step 3.0** In order to be able to deploy AWS instances, select the 'Configure' option and enter the following information;

- AWS ACCESS KEY ID:
- AWS SECRET ACCESS KEY:
- AWS Region:
- Allow List: (allows public access to the AWS environment from your Gemini Central provisioning tool)

**Step 4.0** When complete, select the 'Configure' button to reveal the screen shown below. At this time a connection and initial configuration to AWS is attempted, using the above credentials.

**Note:** This process may take several minutes, so please be patient.

Configure	
AWS ACCESS KEY ID	
AKIAQB 6Z22A4	
AWS SECRET ACCESS KEY	
X8aQ7cmsEX	/mMiAp
Region	
us-west-2	~
Allow list	
61.216.95.30/32	
Ip of the host required to access the instances cre	ated

CANCEL

<b>GE</b>	Standalone Node	Dia 🚏 admir
HOME	Splunk > AWS Provision	
>		
	Arranging Aws Resources	Complete
	Gat ynur SSH minste kay whan kay nair is raadv	
LICENSE		
SETTINGS		
	ОК	

Step 5.0 Assuming the AWS connection has been successful using the details provided, a confirmation screen will appear.

Use the 'Download' button to obtain your SSH private key, required in order to SSH into any of the instances.

Select the 'OK' button to return to the AWS Provisioning dashboard.

Step 6.0 From the AWS Provisioning dashboard, select the '+ Create' button to begin the creation of Splunk clusters using AWS instances.

This action will open a configuration screen for the creation of a **Splunk Indexer cluster** followed by an optional Search Head cluster.

Create Instance Group	<b>Name:</b> Use a unique name that references the location of Gemini Central and contains the
Name	use case for the cluster.
Sizing Plan  ✓ Instance type: c5.4xlarge (16 vCPU, 32G RAM), EBS: 8T, Total Instances: 3 Instance type: c5.18xlarge (72 vCPU, 144G RAM), EBS: 16T, Total Instances: 3  Snlink ×	<b>Sizing Plan:</b> There are only two instances that may become a Splunk Indexer (as recommended by Splunk), listed here in the drop-down box.
Splunk Cluster Name	<ul><li>C5.4 xLarge</li><li>C5.18 xLarge</li></ul>
gemini_aws_idx	The 'Total Instance' count is purely dependent
Splunk Cluster Type	on the Daily Volume and Retention settings
Indexer Cluster	provided. In this way, the number and type of
Splunk Version (AMI)	instances can be varied accordingly.
splunk_AMI_8.1.3_2021-03-23	Splunk Cluster Name: Use a name that
Daily Volume (GB/Day)	being created
10 ©	Solunk Cluster Tuney Chasse between en
Retention (Day) 365 ©	Indexer or Search Head cluster. An Indexer
Splunk Admin Password	can be created.
password@1	Solunk Version (AMI): AMI's listed here are
Splunk Secret idxcluster	maintained by Splunk. Select one that meets
	Daily Volume and Retention: Lise to
CREATE	determine the number and type of AWS instances required. This links dynamically to the 'Sizing Plan' entry.
	<b>Splunk Admin Password:</b> Create a suitable password to be used for the admin account of all instances. Ensure to keep a record of this.
	<b>Splunk Secret:</b> Create a suitable secret key for communication within your Splunk Indexer cluster. Ensure to keep a record of this.

Step 7.0 When all the details have been correctly added, select the 'Create' button to reveal the AWS Provisioning progress dashboard which begins looking like the image below;

Splunk > AWS Provision			
Arranging Aws		Adding to Management	
Resources	Creating Splunk Cluster	Center	Complete

The process begins at the '**Resources**' stage as it provisions the required **AWS instances**. This process could take some time to complete especially if many resources are required. On completion however, the '**Creating Splunk Cluster**' stage will begin to form an **Indexer Cluster**.

Arranging Aws	Creating Splunk	Adding to Management	
Resources	Cluster	Center	Complete

A **Splunk Indexer Cluster** is formed together with a **Cluster Master** using the detail offered during setup.

Using **Splunk approved AMI's** keeps the process as authentic as possible, and with the addition of a **Gemini Agent** on each instance, this enables our **Gemini Central** platform to monitor and potentially upgrade the Splunk environment from one central dashboard on the **Management Center** node.

The final part of the process creates the connection between the **Gemini Agent** and **Gemini Central**. If all goes well the following confirmation screen should follow;

Arranging Aws	Creating Splunk	Adding to	
Resources	Cluster	Management Center	Complete

Selecting the '**OK**' button will close the provisioning wizard, and reveal a summary screen of the Instance Groups present.

Selecting the **Indexer Cluster** label at any time will open the **Splunk Environments** dashboard. The **vertical ellipsis** menu offers options to **Destroy** or **Upgrade** the AWS Splunk environment.

Splunk > AWS Provis	sion					
Configuration						
🔗 Configure						
Instance Oneur						
Instance Group	IS					
+ Create						
gemini-AWS-demo5 - Inde	exer Cluster - gemini-demo	5-idx				
instance Name	Splunk role	instance ID	instance Type	Public Ip	Public DNS	:
gemini-demo5-idx_1	CLUSTER_MASTER	i-0d705db0f6b8a8464	c5.4xlarge	54.214.136.141	ec2-54-214-136-141.us-west-2.compute.amazonaws.com	
gemini-demo5-idx_2	CLUSTER_PEER	i-0cf7732ec3a1435b6	c5.4xlarge	34.218.241.143	ec2-34-218-241-143.us-west-2.compute.amazonaws.com	
gemini-demo5-idx_3	CLUSTER_PEER	i-025eb9e70460e31bc	c5.4xlarge	18.237.110.165	ec2-18-237-110-165.us-west-2.compute.amazonaws.com	

**Step 8.0** Verification of the provisioning process can be completed in three ways;

- The Splunk Environments dashboard in Gemini Central
- The AWS EC2 dashboard
- The **Splunk web** interface of the **Cluster Master** instance (Indexer Clustering dashboard)

Navigate to the Splunk Environments dashboard of **Gemini Central** using either the cluster label on the **AWS Provisioning** dashboard or using Gemini Central's **Splunk** icon.

From this dashboard, we can determine the Cluster Master node, IP addresses assigned, and also note the green circular icons which confirm that the status of splunkd on each instance is 'running'.

					٩	• Build Environment	🔸 🕁	dd Noo
assigned Nodes (3) Name		IP	Туре	Splunk Software	Site	Deployment Type	Last Job	
gemini-demo5-idx							0	:
		54 214 136 141	Gemini Agent	Splunk Enterprise 8.1.3	🗣 default	Cluster Master	0	
- 🔽 ec2-54-214-136-141.us-west-2.compute	.amazonaws.com	04.214.100.141						
<ul> <li>c2-54-214-136-141.us-west-2.compute</li> <li>c2-34-218-241-143.us-west-2.compute</li> </ul>	amazonaws.com	34.218.241.143	Gemini Agent	Splunk Enterprise 8.1.3	• default	Cluster Peer	0	

If you have login credentials to your AWS console, open the **EC2 Dashboard** and select '*running instances*' to view details such as internal IP addresses assigned, VPC ID's, and Subnet information, etc.

New EC2 Experience Tell us what you think	Instances (3) Info	C Connect Instance state V	Actions V Launch instances V
EC2 Dashboard New Events	Q Filter instances           Instance state: running X         search: gemini-AWS-demo5 X	Clear filters	< 1 > <
Tags	□ Name	Instance state  v Instance type	e 🔻 Status check Alarm status
Limits	gemini-AWS-demo5/gemini-demo5-idx_2 i-0cf7732ed	3a1435b6 ⊘ Running @⊙ c5.4xlarge	$\odot$ 2/2 checks passed No alarms +
Instances	gemini-AWS-demo5/gemini-demo5-idx_3 i-025eb9e7	0460e31bc ⊘ Running @⊙ c5.4xlarge	$\odot$ 2/2 checks passed No alarms +
Instances New	gemini-AWS-demo5/gemini-demo5-idx_1 i-0d705db0	f6b8a8464	$\odot$ 2/2 checks passed No alarms +

Alternatively, using the IP addresses given, login to the Splunk web interface of the **Cluster Master** instance to check the status of the **Indexer Clustering** dashboard.

Indexer Clustering: Master Node							
indexer eldeternig: indeter riede					Edit 🔻	More Info 🔻	Documentation I <sup>2</sup>
✓ All Data is Searchable		✓ Search Fac	ctor is Met	~	Replicatio	n Factor	is Met
2 searchable 0 no	ot searchable			2 searchable	0 not searchable		
Peers				h	ndexes		
Peers (2) Indexes (2) Search Heads (1)							
filter Q 10 per page •							
i Peer Name 🗢	Fully Searchable \$		Status \$		Buckets \$ ?		
> ip-10-0-11-38.us-west-2.compute.internal	✓ Yes		Up		6		
> ip-10-0-18-166.us-west-2.compute.internal	✓ Yes		Up		6		

Once verification has been completed, it is possible that you will also want to create a **Search Head Cluster** that links to the **Indexer Cluster**. If this is indeed the case, follow **Steps 9.0 - 12.0** for details on the process.

**Step 9.0** Creating a Splunk **Search Head Cluster** on **AWS** uses a very similar process to that used for the Indexer Cluster.

Step 10.0 Select the '+ Create' button from the AWS Provision dashboard of Gemini Central.

**Step 11.0** Carefully enter details of the required Search Head Cluster using the following as a guide;

Create Instance Group	
gemini-AWS-demo5-shc	
Sizing Plan	
Instance type: c5.4xlarge (16 vCPU, 32G RAM), EBS	S: 1 <b>Y,</b> T
Splunk	
Splunk Cluster Name	
gemini-demo5-shc	
Splunk Cluster Type	
Search Head Cluster	~
Splunk Version (AMI)	
splunk_AMI_8.1.3_2021-03-23	~
Concurrent Users	
16	٢
Concurrent Searches	
32	٢
Master URI	
10.0.17.139	~
Indexer Secret	
idxcluster	
Splunk Admin Password	
gemini@123	
Splunk Secret	
shcluster	

**Name:** Use a unique name that references the location of Gemini Central and contains the use case for the cluster.

**Sizing Plan:** There are only two instances that may become a Splunk SHC (as recommended by Splunk), listed here in the drop-down box.

- C5.4 xLarge
- C5.9 xLarge

The 'Total Instance' count is purely dependent on the Concurrent Users and Concurrent Searches settings provided. In this way, the number and type of instances can be varied accordingly.

**Splunk Cluster Name:** Use a unique name that reflects the use case for the Indexer cluster being created.

**Splunk Cluster Type:** Select the Search Head Cluster option. An Indexer cluster must first be provisioned before an SHC can be created. **Splunk Version (AMI):** AMI's listed here are maintained by Splunk. Select one that meets your requirements.

**Concurrent Users:** and **Concurrent Searches:** These metrics are used by Splunk to gauge the number of CPU cores required for efficient searching. These entries link dynamically to the 'Sizing Plan' entry.

**Master URI:** Notice how this value is automatically populated with the internal IP address used on the AWS subnet. DO NOT modify this setting.

**Indexer Secret:** This should match the secret key used for the formation of the Indexer Cluster to which you wish to attach.

**Splunk Admin Password:** Create a suitable password to be used for the admin account of all instances. Ensure to keep a record of this.

**Splunk Secret:** Create a suitable secret key for communication within your Search Head Cluster. Ensure to keep a record of this.

Select the 'Create' button to begin the AWS provisioning process.

On successful completion of AWS provisioning, select the '**OK**' button to reveal the additional cluster.

Instance Groups						
+ Create						
gemini-AWS-demo5 - Indexer C	Cluster - gemini-demo5-idx					
instance Name	Splunk role	instance ID	instance Type	Public Ip	Public DNS	:
gemini-demo5-idx_1	CLUSTER_MASTER	i-0d705db0f6b8a8464	c5.4xlarge	54.214.136.141	ec2-54-214-136-141.us-west-2.compute.amazonaws.com	
gemini-demo5-idx_2	CLUSTER_PEER	i-0cf7732ec3a1435b6	c5.4xlarge	34.218.241.143	ec2-34-218-241-143.us-west-2.compute.amazonaws.com	
gemini-demo5-idx_3	CLUSTER_PEER	i-025eb9e70460e31bc	c5.4xlarge	18.237.110.165	ec2-18-237-110-165.us-west-2.compute.amazonaws.com	
gemini-AWS-demo5-shc - Sear	ch Head Cluster - gemini-demo5-	shc				
instance Name	Splunk role	instance ID	instance Type	Public Ip	Public DNS	:
gemini-demo5-shc_1	SHC_MEMBER	i-0aecd6ad5df0b2fdb	c5.4xlarge	54.191.75.131	ec2-54-191-75-131.us-west-2.compute.amazonaws.com	
gemini-demo5-shc_2	SHC_MEMBER	i-03dcc06a70279cb3b	c5.4xlarge	54.188.65.244	ec2-54-188-65-244.us-west-2.compute.amazonaws.com	
gemini-demo5-shc_3	SHC_DEPLOYER	i-057877062d1d3d29a	c5.4xlarge	54.245.141.187	ec2-54-245-141-187.us-west-2.compute.amazonaws.com	
gemini-demo5-shc_4	SHC_MEMBER	i-04b84be315e8204ff	c5.4xlarge	34.211.228.199	ec2-34-211-228-199.us-west-2.compute.amszonaws.com	

**Step 12** Verification and observation of the cluster can be carried out by one of the same three methods as used for the Indexer Cluster;

- The Splunk Environments dashboard in Gemini Central
- The AWS EC2 dashboard
- The Splunk web interface of the **Cluster Master** instance (Indexer Clustering dashboard)

Navigate to the **Splunk Environments** dashboard of **Gemini Central** using either the cluster label on the AWS Provisioning dashboard or using Gemini Central's Splunk icon. The screen will show the addition of a Search Head Cluster but due to the use of Gemini Agents within the provisioning wizard, Nodes from both clusters are present only as '**Unassigned Nodes**'. It is possible to leave them in this position if desired, but it is more common to add these clusters into a Splunk Environment space.

The process behind this is to create a '**shell**' environment into which the remote clusters can be imported. For details on this process, refer to the section entitled, <u>Creating a 'shell environment'</u>.

#### Daemon

Allows you to review and modify settings related to Splunk Enterprise's **splunkd** process without requiring a command-line interface. Examples include;

- Stop or restart Splunk
- Upgrade the Splunk version (standalone Node only)
- Reset the Splunk Admin password
- Enable/Disable automatic boot-start and choose between 'initd' or 'systemd'

When Splunk is activated during a **Bulk Provisioning** process it is configured to enable an automatic boot-start using the **systemd** method of service control: ie. '-**systemd-managed 1**'

Existing installations of Splunk on Manage instances used the older '**initd**' system of management control, that if discovered will be left in this state. Use the 'systemd service' checkbox to migrate to the newer system.

The Splunk **Workload Management** feature requires **systemd** to be enabled.

For a standalone version of Manage, running Splunk, Boot-Start is disabled by default.

• Advanced configurations such as changing the Splunk **Server Name** and the default directory used for Splunk indexes.

Note	If changing the <b>Server Name</b> here, the <b>default-hostname</b> value is <i>not</i> changed. Please change the default-hostname param manually to match the server name		
номе	SPLUNK > Daemon		
NODE	Splunk Service Control		
	Stop Splunk       (2) Restart Splunk       (2) Upgrade Splunk       (2) Destroy Splunk Instance         SPLUNK HOME       /opt/splunk         Version       Splunk 7.3.4 (build 13e97039fb65)		
SPLUNK SETTINGS	Boot-Start         Enable Splunk Boot-Start         Enable BOOT-START in order to start Splunk daemon automatically at boot time.         Run Splunk as a systemd service.		

### Web Interface

Allows you to review and modify settings related to Splunk Enterprise's Web Interface, Splunk Web. Here you may

• Disable or enable Splunk Web

Following a Bulk Provision process, only Search Heads and the Cluster Master have the Splunk web port enabled. This is standard practise for a secure Indexer Cluster.

- Launch Splunk web in a separate browser tab
- Review and modify advanced configurations such as enabling encryption and the default web port.

¢3	Splunk Manager	Splunk Web
HOME	Daemon Web Interface	Enable Splunk web interface
NODE	Hunk Apps	Advanced Configurations
CLUSTER	Splunk Diag Optimizer	🐵 Open Splunk Web
LICENSE	Config Editor Versioning	Enable/disable SSL for Splunk Web web.conf : [settings] : enableSplunkWebSSL ON OFF
SPLUNK	Command Cluster Management	Configure default HTTP/S port for Splunk Web web.conf = [settings] : httpport. 8000
SETTINGS	Deactivate	RESTART SPLUNK TO APPLY
ACCOUNT		

# Apps

The **Apps** dashboard provides a list of all currently installed Splunk apps on the Gemini instance. Each app may be downloaded to your desktop as a tarball file using the vertical ellipsis button. Alternatively, select an app to access its directory structure using the Gemini **Config Editor** interface.

C3	Splunk Manager	Installed Splunk Apps	
	Daemon Web Interface Hunk Apps Splunk Diag Optimizer Config Editor	Name       SplunkForwarder       SplunkLightForwarder       Log Event Alert Action       Webhook Alert Action       Apps Browser       framework       Getting started	0 0 0 0
LICENSE	Versioning Command	introspection_generator_addon Home	() ()
SPLUNK	Cluster Management Deactivate	leamed legacy sample data Search & Reporting	9 9 9
ACCOUNT		spruin Archiver App splunk_httpinput Instrumentation Monitoring Console user-prefs	6 6 6 6

# Splunk Diag

This dashboard allows you to quickly create a Splunk diag file [./splunk diag] from this, or any other Gemini instance that belongs to the Manage Cluster.

If this is conducted from the **Management Center**, the Splunk diag files from all Splunk instances controlled by this 'Parent' node, including those on Gemini Agents can be gathered to create a central repository for Diag files.



Use the '+ Create Splunk Diag File' button to open a selection panel;

Generating Splunk Diag		
Remote Nodes		
Please choose a node	~	

The drop-down box will offer a selection from any Splunk instance that the **Management Center** (or parent node) is aware of, including remote Gemini Agents!

## Optimizer

The **Optimizer** will set various configuration options for Splunk that suit various Splunk instance types. Settings are based on Splunk best practice recommendations, and will be applied from the opt/splunk/etc/system/local directory.

- Splunk Default (settings that result from a standard install of Splunk)
- Indexer
- Heavy Forwarder
- Search Head
- All In One

¢3	Splunk Manager	Splunk Optimizer			
номе	Daemon Web Interface	Please selected the desired instan Search Head	ce type	APPLY	
	Hunk Apps Splunk Dieg	Each item below will be written dir if they exist. Enable the Versioning	ectly in the associated config fil tool first in case settings rollba	e in SSPLUNK_HOME/etc/system/local, ov ck is required.	erwritting existing keys
CLUSTER	Optimizer Config Editor	default default	key srchDiskQuota srchJobsQuota	1000	Description
LICENSE	Versioning Command	default default	rtSrchJobsQuota srchMaxTime	12 0	
SPLUNK	Deactivate	monitor:///sbox/admin/var/log/ monitor:///sbox/admin/var/log/	disabled index	true default	Add SBOX logs m
HADOOP		monitor:///sbox/admin/var/log/ settings settings	sourcetype startwebserver enableSplunkWebSSL	sbox true true	Add SBOX logs m
SETTINGS		settings settings	ssiVersions privKeyPath	tls, tls1.0 etc/auth/splunkweb/privkey.pem	Allow TLS only fo
		settings search	max_upload_size status_cache_size	1024 20000	Set maximum siz
ACCOUNT		join lookup	subsearch_maxout max_memtable_bytes	2000000	Maximum result r Maximum 200ME

It is highly recommended that if using this feature, that you first apply our '<u>Versioning</u>' feature. This will ensure that if unintended effects are noticed, this application of settings can be reversed using the '**Rollback**' option.

	<b>Warning:</b> Ensure that you review the settings before selecting the ' <b>Apply</b> ' button, as there is no easy way to undo settings applied using this feature.
Note	<ol> <li>These settings will take precedence over <i>all</i> other settings due to their location (/etc/system/local)</li> <li>Re-applying the 'Splunk Default' template will NOT recover the settings.</li> <li>Original settings can only be recovered using the Versioning / Rollback facility or by a manual edit of files in the /splunk/etc/system/local/ directory</li> </ol>

## Config Editor

The **Config Editor** feature allows you to edit, create, upload and unzip files within the **\$SPLUNK\_HOME/etc/** directory path using the convenience of the web interface.

Use the **lcon buttons** to create new directories for config files or apps, create a new file in an on-screen editor, and upload files from your workstation.

SPLUNK > Config Editor			
Splunk Config Editor			
SSPLUNK.HOME/etc			
🔁 Create New Folder 🛛 Create New File 🚺 Upload File			
Name 💌	Size	Modified	
🗈 .ui,Jogin		2020-06-09 02:16:29	:
anonymizer/		2020-03-04 09:56:58	:
apps/		2020-03-04 09:57:41	:
auth/		2020-06-09 02:16:34	:
Copyright.txt	57B	2020-03-04 09:36:36	:
datetime.xml	8.0KiB	2020-03-04 09:36:35	:
deployment-apps/		2020-07-06 02:57:12	:

Using the **vertical ellipsis** menu to the right of the file or directory reveals; **copy, move, rename**, **remove** or **extract** functions.

To create a new folder/directory, use the 'Move' open to 'Add New folder'.

To extract a tarball or zip file, use the **Extract** option (see below)

🙃 Create New Folder 🛛 🧔 Create New File 🕚 Upload	File		
Name 👻	Size	Modified	
README	307B	2020-01-08 12:23:32	:
splunk_base_apps_for_DS.tar.gz	32.0KiB	2020-07-27 07:01:59	
			Сору
			Move
			Rename
			Remove
			Extract

Take care when editing Splunk .conf files. Remember that clustered instances control configuration files centrally. Never make changes to files in a '**Default**' directory, *always* use the '**Loca**l' directory.

C3	Splunk Manager	Splunk Config Editor
номе	Daemon Web Interface	SSPLUNK_HOME/etc:system:default:app.conf
NODE	Hunk Apps	relood.fields' = simple relood.history = simple relood.hemd = simple
CLUSTER	Splunk Diag	reload indexes = access_endpoints /data/indexes reload limits = access_endpoints /server/status/limits/general reload limitus = simple
	Config Editor	retoda.marger = simple retoda.marger = simple retoda.models = simple retoda.nov = simple
LICENSE	Versioning	reload.outputs = access_endpoints /data/outputs/tcp/server reload.props = aimple reload.props = access_endpoints /admin/transforms-reload reload.quickstart = simple
SPLUNK	Deactivate	relod.restmap = rest_endpoints relod.searchbnf = simple relod.searchbnf = simple relod.searchbnf = bitb.post_replication/configuration/whitelist-reload
HADOOP		reload.tags = simple reload.times = simple reload.transforms = access_endpoints /admin/transforms-reload reload.views = simple reload.views = simple reload.viewstates = simple
SETTINGS		relod.med/metactions = intp.post /server/control/restarc_webul_poilte # bata inputs # TODO: /data/inputs/tcp/ssl dessn#333; implement reload? relod.inputs = access_endpoints /data/inputs/monits/inputs/sonitor, /data/inputs/script, /data/inputs/udp./data/inputs/tcp/rom, /data/inputs/tcp/cooked, /data/inputs/http [ui] show_in_nov = true
ACCOUNT		BACK

To '**rollback**' any changes, use this in conjunction with the **Versioning** feature.

## Versioning

This feature allows use of our **Splunk Configuration Repository**, which in turn allows you to maintain version control of your Splunk configuration changes. Provided you are running the Enterprise version of Gemini Central, an unlimited number of configuration versions can be retained.

This feature actually uses the 'git' mechanism behind the scenes to provide a simple capture, roll-back and recover facility, following any changes that may have had unintended consequences.

This feature is '**off**' by default. Enable the feature using the slider button on the **Splunk / Versioning** dashboard. Once enabled, an '**Initial commit**' version of the current configuration will automatically be made that will become version (1).

Use the '**Create New Revision**' button to record any changes made to Splunk configuration files on this instance. When initiating a new revision, it is mandatory - and extremely useful - that you create a '**Description**' regarding the changes made to the Splunk configuration for reference purposes.

Each revision will capture incremental changes for the addition, amendment or deletion of Splunk files contained in the **splunk/etc** directory, as compared to the previous numbered '**commit**' version.



#### **Rollback Option**

Use the '**Rollback**' option located at the vertical ellipsis menu at any time you need to temporarily rollback your changes to any one of the previous revision states.

Revisio	ins				
	New Revision				
Create new revis	sion to save status, or click on revis	ion number to check detail information and changes.			
Head Revi	vision 🔻	Description	User	Created	
<b>Q</b> 2		Addition of Deployment Server feature	admin	2020-07-06 03:01:37	
<b>Q</b> 2		Addition of Deployment Server feature Initial commit	admin admin	2020-07-06 03:01:37 2020-07-06 02:35:24	<b>!</b>

On initiation of the **Rollback**, a message is displayed advising that an earlier revision has been selected and is now in use by Splunk.

Rollback State	
	Information
Splunk Configuration is temporarily in revision 4. You can go back to the latest saved revision by clicking the 'Cancel Rollback' icon. Creating a 'new revision' in this state will overwrite revisions after revision 4.	Behind the scenes this command initiates a <b>git-checkout master &lt;@HEAD&gt;</b> command. (use the <b>Cancel</b> option to perform git revert)
CLOSE	For logging information, see the <b>master</b> file in; /opt/splunk/etc/.git/logs/refs/heads/

#### **Recover option**

The **Recover** option offers a more permanent change to the committed history of a version. This command can be found by selecting the revision number listed under the Revision column. The process will completely eliminate the history regarding this revision, although any additional files or changes are not restored automatically. If additional files or changes were created in this version that are no longer required, manually amend those changes in the /etc directory of Splunk.

On initiation of **Recover**, the following message will be displayed confirming complete removal of the revision history.

Are you sure?	Information
Recover will change Splunk Configuration to revision 5. Revision after revision 5 will be permanently deleted.	Behind the scenes this command initiates a git-reset[1] command to remove the commit history (Note: use the <b>Cancel</b> option to perform git revert)
RECOVER	For logging information, see the <b>master</b> file in; /opt/splunk/etc/.git/logs/refs/heads/
# Command

The **Splunk Command** feature allows you to issue Splunk commands directly from your browser.

Some commands like **status** or **version** do not require authentication and can be run as shown in the example below.

Other commands must have an authentication parameter added in order to run;

ie. list licenses -auth admin:gemini123

Notice that the '**splunk**' command is already implied when using this interface

SPL	UNK > Command	
(	2 Command Helper	
E.	Iter a Splunk command to run g. 'version' or 'status' for Splunk information. ote:	
1 2	For security reason, some characters and "ornd" command are restricted. . User interactive commands like "apply shcluster-bundle" are not supported.	
S	plunk > status	F

#### Installing a Splunk App

An example use-case for the **Command** feature, could be to add a new Spunk App.

- 1. Use either the **Splunk Config Editor** or SCP to upload the Splunk App to your Manage instance. We will assume the use of SCP to the /tmp directory.
- 2. Use the following command in the command entry box and select the '**Execute**' button

install app /tmp/NewAppName.spl -auth admin:<password>

SPLUNK > Command	
7 Command Helper	
Enter a Splunk command to run E.g. "version" or "status" for Splunk information.	
Note:	
<ol> <li>For security reason, some characters and "cmd" command are restricted.</li> <li>User interactive commands like "apply shcluster-bundle" are not supported.</li> </ol>	
splunk > install app /tmp/NewAppName.spl -auth admin:password	EXECUTE

3. A message should confirm successful installation of the App.

# **Splunk Environments**

Within Gemini Central, a '**Splunk Environment**' generally contains an **Indexer** and **Search Head Cluster** created in one or more locations, perhaps with one or more Splunk standalone instances. Several such 'environments' could exist making the management of multiple Splunk environments easier to maintain centrally at the **Environments** dashboard of the **Management Center**.

If you require one or more **Splunk Environments** to be created using existing Gemini instances, or if you want to add more instances to grow your existing Splunk environment, use the **Splunk Environments** dashboard of Gemini Central.

Using **Gemini Agents**, Splunk Environments support the adoption of existing 'remote' Splunk instances, including complete Splunk clusters. Refer to the <u>Gemini Agents</u> section for more detail.

When a requirement exists to upgrade Splunk to a new version, you are able to upgrade entire environments, including remote Splunk clusters with a few simple clicks of the mouse.

The **Splunk Environments** dashboard has a built-in heartbeat monitoring feature that works across *all* Gemini instances including those remote Splunk instances that contain Gemini Agents. This feature gives a real-time status of your entire Splunk deployment and is represented by the green icon. This will immediately change to red should Splunk fail.

To access the **Environments** dashboard from the vertical menu bar, select **Splunk / Environments** (see below for an example).

<b>CE</b>							admir 🧯
Ê	Appliance Cluster 01				2 Clusters	<b>&gt;</b>	:
HOME	gemini-appliance-009		٠	Splunk Enterprise 7.3.4		<b>&gt;</b>	:
	gemini-appliance-008		•	Splunk Enterprise 7.3.4		<b>&gt;</b>	:
王	gemini-cluster-idxcluster	Indexer			3 Nodes	9	:
CLUSTER	gemini-appliance-001	Cluster Master	♥ site1	Splunk Enterprise 7.3.4		<b>&gt;</b>	:
×	gemini-appliance-002	Cluster Peer	♥ site1	Splunk Enterprise 7.3.4		<b>&gt;</b>	:
EXPLORE	gemini-appliance-003	Cluster Peer	♥ site1	Splunk Enterprise 7.3.4		<b>&gt;</b>	:
LICENSE	gemini-cluster-shcluster	Search Head			4 Nodes	9	:
>	gemini-appliance-004	SHC Deployer	♥ site1	Splunk Enterprise 7.3.4	•	<b>&gt;</b>	:
SPLUNK	gemini-appliance-007	SHC Member	♥ site1	Splunk Enterprise 7.3.4	•	<b>&gt;</b>	:
++++ ++++ TABLEAU	gemini-appliance-005	SHC Member	♥ site1	Splunk Enterprise 7.3.4	•	<b>&gt;</b>	:
a	gemini-appliance-006	SHC Member	♥ site1	Splunk Enterprise 7.3.4	•	<b>&gt;</b>	:
SETTINGS	Remote Splunk Cluster				2 Clusters	<b>&gt;</b>	:
	splunk-sh1.geminidata.com		۰	Splunk Enterprise 7.3.3	•	<b>&gt;</b>	:
	splunk-ds.geminidata.com		٠	Splunk Enterprise 7.3.3	•	<b>&gt;</b>	:
	Remote_prod_SHC_01	Search Head			4 Nodes	0	:

#### Prerequisites:

If you want to create an **Indexer Cluster** from instances, the following conditions must be met:

• At least three nodes are required for an indexer cluster, one being assigned as the Cluster Master and other two as peer nodes.

• If multi-site clustering is required, there must be at least 2 indexers on each site. Check the **Nodes / Name** dashboard for naming and IP detail.

If you want to create a **Search Head Cluster** from instances, the following conditions must be met:

- A Splunk Indexer Cluster must already exist, the Cluster Master IP address and Indexer secret key must both be known. These are all requirements for creating a Search Head Cluster.
- At least 4 nodes are required for a Search Head Cluster, one designated as a Deployer and the others as Search Peer nodes. The Cluster Master and Deployer must be separate instances.

If you want to adopt an **existing Splunk cluster** or environment, including a **remote Splunk cluster**, the following conditions must be met:

- A complete cluster must be added in one operation, observing the correct number and roles(as above). Incomplete cluster members or incorrect cluster information will cause a failure during assignment into an environment. Cluster Master and Deployer can not exist on the same node.
- If the existing Splunk cluster is not running on Gemini instances, ie, a remote Splunk environment, ensure that Gemini Agents have been correctly installed on all the target hosts.
- A new Splunk Environment must exist in Gemini Central prior to the adoption of another cluster. To facilitate this, a '**shell**' environment can be created as the container for the adoption of an existing Splunk instance or cluster within the Splunk Environments dashboard.

							1
SPLUNK > Splur	ık Environments						
✓ Environments	Clusters 🕑 Nodes	Search for name, IP		Q	• Build Environment	t 😗 J	Add Nod
		No	Environments				
Unassigned Nodes (1	10) IP	Туре	Splunk Software	Site	Deployment Type	Status	
gemini-004	172.27.14.134	Software Appliance	Not Installed	-		0	:
gemini-001	172.27.14.131	Software Appliance	Not Installed	-		0	:
Centos	172.27.14.130	Manage Agent	Not Installed	-		0	:
gemini-003	172.27.14.133	Software Appliance	Not Installed			0	:
_						-	

Refer to the <u>Creating a 'shell environment'</u> section for details.

#### Adding a Node (Unassigned Nodes)

An additional Node includes any **Manage Instances(s)** or **Gemini Agent(s)** that are required to be added into the **Management Center** node of Gemini Central.

In order to add standalone Splunk Instances or complete Splunk clusters into the **Management Center**, they will first need to be made available as '**Unassigned Nodes**'. Only then can they be re-assigned to an existing Splunk Environment, or used for the creation of a new Splunk Environment. There are several ways of adding to the list of Unassigned Nodes depending on the number and type involved;

- Add a single Node (Splunk need not be present)
- <u>Add a pre-existing Splunk Indexer Cluster</u> (instances or Gemini Agents)
- Add a pre-existing Splunk Search Head Cluster (instances or Gemini Agents)
- Add a group of standalone Splunk Nodes (instances or Gemini Agents)

If you already have unassigned node(s), and you wish to assign them to a Cluster or Environment, refer to the <u>Assigning Unassigned Nodes and Clusters to a Splunk Environment</u> section.

#### Add a single Node

To begin the process select the '**+ Add Node**' button from the Splunk Environments dashboard of the Management Center, to reveal the following:

Add Node	
Please input FQDN to discover	
FQDN	
IP	

Enter a single **FQDN name** and **IP address** into the appropriate boxes. Note that both of these are required to be completed. If you do not know the name of the host or indeed if you want to rename it, add the chosen name to the **FQDN** box and select the '**Add**' button. This will add the Node with the chosen name.

NotesAppliance addition: It is important that the version of Manage used is<br/>the same as that at the Management Center<br/>Remote node addition: The Gemini Agent must first be installed on the<br/>remote Splunk instance.

#### Add a pre-existing Splunk Indexer Cluster

This method is ideally suited to the addition of external Splunk Environments running our **Gemini Agents**.

For details on the installation of Gemini Agents, refer to the Gemini Agents section.

Select the **'+ Add Node**' button from the **Splunk Environments** dashboard of the **Management Center** and locate the **JSON** and **CSV** manifest templates. Or upload a list of nodes or configuration of a cluster in the conf file to add nodes  $% \left( {{{\rm{D}}_{\rm{c}}}} \right)$ 



If you want to add a **Splunk Indexer Cluster** that exists externally, first ensure that each instance of that cluster has the **Gemini Agent** installed.

Select the chosen format(CSV or JSON) for the '**Sample Indexer Cluster Manifest**' to download the appropriate manifest file. This should be opened in a suitable text editor.

#### **JSON Manifest Option**

After reading the instructions given at the beginning of the manifest file, complete the manifest using the correct JSON format where;

'cluster\_name' is the name of the cluster. Give it a unique name.

'type' Use "SPLUNK\_INDEXER' for an Indexer Cluster.

'nodes' is the list of cluster members. There are 7 attributes in each node:

'hostname' is used to identify the node. Please keep it the same with the node.

'ip' is the IPv4 address of this node. Use the IP address the management node can connect to.

'**role**' is the role it has in the cluster; In an indexer cluster, this could be either 'CLUSTER\_MASTER' or 'CLUSTER\_PEER'.

'splunk\_home' is the home directory of the Splunk service (/opt/splunk by default)

'splunk\_user' is an OS user created by Gemini to run Splunk.

'admin\_username' is the account used for administrator privilege.

'admin\_password' is the password of the admin account. Not stored in Manage.

'secret' is the secret cluster key, used to communicate between cluster members.

An example of this JSON manifest can be seen below.

"cluster name": "Remote prod IDXCluster", "type": "SPLUNK\_INDEXER", "nodes": [ "hostname": "splunk\_cm.example.com", "ip": "192.168.1.1", "role": "CLUSTER MASTER", "splunk\_home": "/opt/splunk",



Verify the following issues carefully before saving the manifest.

- You have used the correct cluster\_name as found in server.conf on the Cluster Master
- You have included all members of the Indexer Cluster
- All entries have been added using valid JSON formatting.
- The 'secret' references the Indexer Clustering secret key

#### **CSV Manifest Option**

This template is simpler and should be completed using the same criteria as described above in the JSON option.

cluster_name	type	role	secret	ip	hostname	splunk_home	splunk_user	admin_username	admin_password
Remote_prod_IDXCluster	SPLUNK_INDEXER	CLUSTER_MASTER	idxcluster	192.168.1.1	splunk_cm.example.com	/opt/splunk	splunk	admin	password
Remote_prod_IDXCluster	SPLUNK_INDEXER	CLUSTER_PEER	idxcluster	192.168.1.2	splunkidx_01.example.com	/opt/splunk	splunk	admin	password
Remote_prod_IDXCluster	SPLUNK_INDEXER	CLUSTER_PEER	idxcluster	192.168.1.3	splunkidx_02.example.com	/opt/splunk	splunk	admin	password
Remote_prod_IDXCluster	SPLUNK_INDEXER	CLUSTER_PEER	idxcluster	192.168.1.4	splunkidx_03.example.com	/opt/splunk	splunk	admin	password

Verify the following issues carefully before saving the manifest.

- You have used the correct cluster\_name as found in server.conf on the Cluster Master
- You have included all members of the Indexer Cluster
- The file is correctly formatted as a CSV file. Download and use the **dos2unix** utility to ensure the correct format if required.
- The 'secret' references the Indexer Clustering secret key

Once the detail has been added correctly, the saved file can simply be dropped into the box marked,

'Drop package here or click to choose the file from your computer'.

Alternatively, use the highlighted 'click to choose' link to locate and upload the file.

Select the 'Add' button to complete the process. **Refresh** the browser. Confirm the new list of '**Unassigned Nodes**', an example is given below.

Unassigned Nodes (5)							
Name	IP	Туре	Splunk Software	Site	Deployment Type	Status	
Remote_prod_IDXCluster		Software Appliance				0	:
- 🔲 splunk_cm	10.1.5.193	Software Appliance	Splunk Enterprise 7.3.3		Cluster Master	0	
- 🚺 splunkidx_01	10.1.5.190	Software Appliance	Splunk Enterprise 7.3.3	<b>9</b> site1	Cluster Peer	0	
- splunkidx_02	10.1.5.191	Software Appliance	Splunk Enterprise 7.3.3	<b>9</b> site1	Cluster Peer	0	
- splunkidx_03	10.1.5.20	Software Appliance	Splunk Enterprise 7.3.3	<b>Q</b> site2	Cluster Peer	0	
- 🔲 splunkidx_04	10.1.5.21	Software Appliance	Splunk Enterprise 7.3.3	♀ site2	Cluster Peer	0	

ASSIGN TO ENVIRONMENT CREATE NEW CLUSTER ADD TO CLUSTER

#### Add a pre-existing Splunk Search Head Cluster

This method is ideally suited to the addition of external Splunk Environments running our **Gemini Agents**.

For details on the installation of Gemini Agents, refer to the Gemini Agents section

Select the **'+ Add Node**' button from the Splunk Environments dashboard of the Management Center and locate the JSON and CSV manifest templates.

If you want to add a **Splunk Search Head Cluster** that exists externally, first ensure that each instance of that cluster has the **Gemini Agent** installed.

Select the '**Sample Search Head Cluster Manifest**' to download the appropriate manifest file. This should be opened in a suitable text editor.

#### **JSON Manifest Option**

After reading the instructions given at the beginning of the file complete the manifest using the correct JSON format where;

'cluster\_name' is the name of the cluster. Give it a unique name.

'type' Use 'SPLUNK\_SHC' for a Search Head Cluster.

'nodes' is the list of cluster members. There are 7 attributes in each node:

'hostname' is used to identify the node. Please keep it the same with the node.

'**ip**' is the IPv4 address of this node. Use the IP address the management node can connect to.

'**role**' is the role it has in the cluster; this could be either 'SHC\_DEPLOYER' or 'SHC\_MEMBER'.

**'splunk\_home'** is the home directory of the Splunk service (/opt/splunk by default) **'splunk\_user'** is an OS user created by Gemini to run Splunk. 'admin\_username' is the account used for administrator privilege.
'admin\_password' is the password of the admin account. Not stored in Manage.
'secret' is the secret cluster key, used to communicate between SHC members.
'indexer\_secret' is the secret indexer cluster key

An example of this JSON manifest can be seen below;



Tip

To ensure that your JSON is correct, use a third party validator such as <u>https://jsonlint.com</u>

Verify the following issues before saving the manifest.

- You have used the correct Search Head Cluster Name as found in the server.conf of any search head in the cluster.
- You have used the correct secret keys. These usually differ between the SHC and Indexer cluster
- All entries have been made using valid JSON formatting.

#### CSV Manifest Option

This template is simpler and should be completed using the same criteria as described above in the JSON option.

cluster_name	type	role	secret	indexer_secret	ip	hostname	splunk_home	splunk_user	admin_userr	admin_password
Remote_prod_SHC	SPLUNK_SHC	SHC_DEPLOYER	shcuster	idxcluster	192.168.1.1	splunk_dep.examp	/opt/splunk	splunk	admin	changeme
Remote_prod_SHC	SPLUNK_SHC	SHC_MEMBER	shcuster	idxcluster	192.168.1.2	splunk_sh2.exampl	/opt/splunk	splunk	admin	changeme
Remote_prod_SHC	SPLUNK_SHC	SHC_MEMBER	shcuster	idxcluster	192.168.1.3	splunk_sh3.exampl	/opt/splunk	splunk	admin	changeme
Remote_prod_SHC	SPLUNK_SHC	SHC_MEMBER	shcuster	idxcluster	192.168.1.4	splunk_sh4.exampl	/opt/splunk	splunk	admin	changeme

Verify the following issues carefully before saving the manifest.

- You have used the correct Search Head Cluster Name as found in the server.conf of any search head in the cluster.
- You have used the correct secret keys. These usually differ between the SHC and Indexer cluster
- The file is correctly formatted as a CSV file. Download and use the **dos2unix** utility to ensure the correct format if required.

When complete, the saved file can simply be dropped into the box marked,

#### 'Drop package here or click to choose the file from your computer'.

Alternatively, use the highlighted 'click to choose' link to locate and upload the file.

Select the 'Add' button to complete the process. **Refresh** the browser. Confirm the new list of 'Unassigned Nodes'.

Unassigned Nodes (9)							
Name	IP	Туре	Splunk Software	Site	Deployment Type	Status	
Remote_prod_IDXCluster		Software Appliance				0	:
- 🔲 splunk_cm	10.1.5.193	Software Appliance	Splunk Enterprise 7.3.3		Cluster Master	0	
- 🔲 splunkidx_01	10.1.5.190	Software Appliance	Splunk Enterprise 7.3.3	• site1	Cluster Peer	0	
- 🔲 splunkidx_02	10.1.5.191	Software Appliance	Splunk Enterprise 7.3.3	♥ site1	Cluster Peer	0	
- 🔲 splunkidx_03	10.1.5.20	Software Appliance	Splunk Enterprise 7.3.3	♥ site2	Cluster Peer	0	
- 🔲 splunkidx_04	10.1.5.21	Software Appliance	Splunk Enterprise 7.3.3	• site2	Cluster Peer	0	
Remote_prod_SHC		Software Appliance				0	:
- 🔲 splunk_dep	10.1.5.25	Software Appliance	Splunk Enterprise 7.3.3		SHC Deployer	0	
- 🔲 splunk_sh2	10.1.5.22	Software Appliance	Splunk Enterprise 7.3.3		SHC Member	0	
- 🔲 splunk_sh3	10.1.5.23	Software Appliance	Splunk Enterprise 7.3.3		SHC Member	0	
- 🔲 splunk_sh4	10.1.5.24	Software Appliance	Splunk Enterprise 7.3.3		SHC Member	0	

ASSIGN TO ENVIRONMENT CREATE NEW CLUSTER ADD TO CLUSTER

#### Add a Group of standalone Splunk Nodes

This could be used for bringing other instances such as; standalone Search Head, Heavy Forwarder, License Manager or Deployment Server into a Splunk Environment.

Select the '**+ Add Node**' button from the Splunk Environments dashboard of the Management Center and locate the **JSON** and **CSV manifest** templates.

Select the '**Sample Standalone Nodes Manifest**' to download the appropriate manifest file. This should be opened in a suitable text editor.

#### **JSON Manifest Option**

After reading the instructions given at the beginning of the file complete the manifest using the correct JSON format where;

'hostname' is used to identify the node. Please keep it the same with the node.

'ip' is the IPv4 address of this node. Use the IP address the management node can connect to.

'splunk\_home' is the home directory of the Splunk service (/opt/splunk by default)

'splunk\_user' is an OS user created by Gemini to run Splunk.

'admin\_username' is the account used for administrator privilege.

'admin\_password' is the password of the admin account. Not stored in Manage.

An example of this manifest is shown below for two potential Splunk instances;

```
1.
"type": "STANDALONE NODE".
"nodes": [
     "hostname": "gemini-ds.example.com",
     "ip": "192.168.56.114",
     "splunk_home": "/opt/splunk",
     "splunk_user": "splunk",
     "admin_username": "admin",
     "admin_password": "password"
  },
     "hostname": "gemini-mc.example.com",
     "ip": "192.168.56.103",
     "splunk_home": "/opt/splunk",
     "splunk_user": "splunk",
     "admin username": "admin",
     "admin_password": "password"
  }
]
```

Tip

To ensure that your JSON is correct, use a third party validator such as <a href="https://jsonlint.com">https://jsonlint.com</a>

#### **CSV Manifest Option**

This template is simpler and should be completed using the same criteria as described above in the JSON option.

type	ip	hostname	splunk_home	splunk_user	admin_username	admin_password
STANDALONE_NODE	192.168.56.114	gemini-ds	/opt/splunk	splunk	admin	password
STANDALONE_NODE	192.168.56.115	gemin-mc	/opt/splunk	splunk	admin	password

When complete, the saved file can simply be dropped into the box marked,

'Drop package here or <u>click to choose</u> the file from your computer'.

Alternatively, use the highlighted 'click to choose' link to locate and upload the file.

Select the 'Add' button to complete the process. **Refresh** the browser before confirming the new list of 'Unassigned Nodes'.

#### Assigning Unassigned Nodes and Clusters to a Splunk Environment

When **Unassigned Nodes** have been made available we have three choices highlighted by the buttons at the bottom of the screen to work with an existing Splunk Environment.

- Assign to Environment Assigns Nodes or Clusters to a specific Environment
- <u>Create New Cluster</u> Used to create a new Splunk Cluster
- Add to Cluster
   Used to increase the number of Indexers or Search Heads

Before using these options you may need to create a new '**Splunk Environment**'. For instance, it is always recommended to assign a remote **Gemini Agent cluster** to a different **Splunk Environment**, in order to separate it from existing instance clusters and other potential Splunk Clusters in Manage.

If required, refer to the <u>Creating a 'shell environment</u>' section for help on creating a new **Splunk Environment** before assigning nodes or clusters.

For assistance on adding remote Splunk instances and clusters, refer to the Gemini Agents section.

#### Assign to Environment

If a **Splunk Environment** already exists, this option can be used to create standalone Splunk instances such as a **Deployment Server** or **Management Console**, or perhaps a Gemini **Log Receiver** instance, within that environment.

Alternatively, in the case of a **remote Splunk cluster**, once a suitable '**shell environment**' exists, this option can be used to locate a Splunk cluster into that **Splunk Environment** shell, as in the example image below.

If you require simply to add an additional **Indexer** or **Search Head** to your existing **Splunk Environment**, then please refer to the <u>Add to Cluster</u> section.

Unassigned Nodes (3)							
V Name	IP	Туре	Splunk Software	Site	Deployment Type	Status	
Splunk-remote-cluster		Software Appliance		-		0	:
- 🗹 splunkidx_01	10.1.5.190	Software Appliance	Splunk Enterprise 7.3.1		Cluster Peer	0	
- 🗹 splunkidx_02	10.1.5.191	Software Appliance	Splunk Enterprise 7.3.1		Cluster Peer	0	
- 🕑 splunk_cm	10.1.5.193	Software Appliance	Splunk Enterprise 7.3.1		Cluster Master	0	
ASSIGN TO ENVIRONMENT CREATE NEW CLUSTER ADD	TO CLUSTER						

Select the required node from the **Unassigned Nodes** panel of the **Splunk Environments** dashboard.

Select the 'Assign to Environment' button at the bottom of the screen.

Form the panel that opens on the right, choose an appropriate '**Splunk Environment**' to which this node should be added, and select the '**Assign**' button.

#### **Create New Cluster**

This option is aimed at standalone Unassigned Nodes. Use the built-in Wizard to create a new Splunk **Indexer** or **Search Head Cluster**.

Select the appropriate number of instances from the '**Unassigned Nodes**' panel to form either an **Indexer** (minimum of 3) or **Search Head Cluster** (minimum of 4), and choose the '**Create New Cluster**' button to reveal the start of the Wizard:

Environment Name		
Specify a name to identify your Environment.	Appliance Training Cluster	~
Available Sites		
Add a comma-separated list of physical or logical locations. Assigning nodes to sites will be done at a later	site1 x	
step		

At **Step 1** of the wizard, select the appropriate Splunk **Environment Name** into which you require to create this new Splunk cluster, and add the **site** detail accordingly. This will usually consist of '**site1**', unless you are building a multi-site cluster environment, in which case you will need to add 'site2', etc.

Notes	<ol> <li>If the Splunk Environment does not yet exist for this cluster, you will need to first create one, please refer to the <u>Creating a 'shell</u> <u>environment'</u> section for details.</li> </ol>
	<ol> <li>If you are wanting to add both an Indexer Custer and a Search Head Cluster, create the Indexer Cluster first, as a Cluster Master reference and secret key is required.</li> </ol>

Select the 'Organize Cluster' button when done.

At **Step 2**, select the '**+ New Cluster**' button to add a new cluster.

Add an Indexer Cluster prior to that of a Search Head Cluster. Therefore, perform this as two separate tasks in two separate clusters as suggested below;

#### Creating an Indexer Cluster

Use a suitable '**Name**' for the new **Indexer Cluster** Ensure that the '**Type**' is set to '**Indexer**' Create a new '**Splunk secret key**' that will be used to authenticate the cluster members. Select the '**Organize Nodes**' button to progress in creating the Indexer Cluster

This Environment	Appliance Train	Appliance Training Environment Splunk Enterprise v7.3.3  Site1					
<b>Organize Clusters</b> Add as many clusters as neede for this environment. Assigning nodes to clusters will be done in a later step.	Name Type	gemini-cluster-idx01	. ⊗				
	Splunk Secret	newSecretKey					
	🕂 New	Cluster					

#### **Creating a Search Head Cluster**

A Search Head Cluster can only be created once an Indexer Cluster has been provisioned. The following will also be required in order to complete this operation;

- The Cluster Master IP address
- The Indexer Cluster secret key

Use a suitable 'Name' for the new Search Head Cluster

#### Ensure that the 'Type' is set to 'Search Head'

Enter a **secret key** for the Search head Cluster in the **Splunk Secret** box used for authenticating Search Heads to their cluster. Best practice dictates that this should be different from the secret key used for the Indexer Cluster.

Enter the Cluster Master IP address in the Indexer Master URI box.

Enter the **Indexer Cluster** secret key in the **Indexer Secret:** box. This is visible in its encrypted form within the **Splunk Secret** entry for the **Indexer Cluster**. Do not be tempted to copy and paste this into the Indexer Secret box. Always use the original secret key assigned to the Indexer Cluster prior to its encryption.

## Note

Creation of a **Search Head Cluster** will require identification of a valid **Cluster Master**. If you are building a brand new Splunk environment, an **Indexer Cluster** will need to be provisioned prior to the **Search Head Cluster**.

This Environment		Appliance Trainin Site1	ng Cluster	
Organize Clusters Add as many clusters as Assigning nodes to cluste	neede for this environment. ers will be done in a later step.	Name Type Splunk Secret	gemini-cluster-idx-01 Indexer ~ RENTWIpcWFBZSREOCgULBQI=	] <b>⊗</b>
		Name Type Splunk Secret Indexer Master URI Indexer Secret	gemini-cluster-sh-01         Search Head       ~         shclustersecret         10.1.5.41         indexerclustersecret	] ⊗ ] ]
		+ New C	luster	
Note	The <b>secret k</b> be recorded a successful co	<b>eys</b> for b and held ompletion	oth the <b>Indexer</b> and the <b>Search Head</b> Clusters in a secure place. These are fundamental to the of any future cluster related function.	should e

Select the 'Organize Nodes' button on completion.

At **Step 3**, we are presented with the following screen, allowing you to designate which nodes will make up the Indexer or Search Head Cluster, and which one will be made the Cluster Master or Deployer instance.

Available Nodes						
Select unassigned nodes and assign them with the designated roles			🛨 Add T	o Cluster		
	Nama	ID Addros	Add to Indexer Clusters			
	Name	IP Addres	gemini-clu	ster-idx-01		
	🥑 gemini-816fdc	10.1.5.46	Add to Search Head			:
	🗹 gemini-beba10	10.1.5.47	gemini-clu	ster-shc-01		:
	🧹 gemini-acbab2	10.1.5.44				:
	✓ gemini-22f35f	10.1.5.45				:
Your Clusters	Name	Address	Model	Туре	Status	
Review the computation and change the type if needed	gemini-cluster-idx-01			Indexer	0	
	gemini-002	10.1.5.42		Cluster Master	<ul> <li>Image: A start of the start of</li></ul>	
	gemini-003	10.1.5.43		Cluster Peer	<b>Ø</b>	
	gemini-001	10.1.5.41		Cluster Peer	0	
	gemini-cluster-shc-01			Search Head		

Select the nodes required from the 'Available Nodes' presented, and use the '+ Add To Cluster' button to assign them to the newly created **Search Head Cluster** listed.

Refer to the '**Your Clusters'** panel to choose which node you want to assign as a **Cluster Master** or **Deployer** instance using the vertical ellipsis menu.

Your Clusters	Name	Address Model	Type Status
Review the configuration and change the type if needed	gemini-cluster-idx-01		Indexer <
	gemini-002	10.1.5.42	Cluster Master
	gemini-003	10.1.5.43	Cluster Peer 🕑
	gemini-001	10.1.5.41	Cluster Peer 🧹
	gemini-cluster-shc-01		Search Head
	gemini-acbab2	10.1.5.44	Deployer 🥑 :
	gemini-816fdc	10.1.5.46	Search Head 🧹 :
	gemini-beba10	10.1.5.47	Search Heal Set as Deployer
	gemini-22f35f	10.1.5.45	Search Hea

At **Step 4**, select the '**Locate Nodes**' button to assign this cluster to a '**site**'. Highlight instances in the cluster, as shown below, and select the '**+ Set Site**' button to select the site number. This will generally be '**site1**' in a single site cluster arrangement. This may change to 'site2' or 'site3', etc, if you are using a multi-site cluster arrangement.

Locate Nodes All Nodes have been automatically located to the first site. Adjust the local assignment as needed						🔸 Set Site
aite. Aujuat the iocal assignment as needed.						site1
	Name	IP Address	Model	Туре	Site	
	gemini-cluster-idx-01			Indexer		
	- gemini-002	10.1.5.42		Cluster Master	♀ site1	
	- gemini-003	10.1.5.43		Cluster Peer	♀ site1	
	- gemini-001	10.1.5.41		Cluster Peer	Site1	
	gemini-cluster-shc-01			Search Head		
	- 🔽 gemini-acbab2	10.1.5.44		Deployer	♀ site1	:
	- 🔽 gemini-816fdc	10.1.5.46		Search Head	♀ site1	:
	- 🔽 gemini-beba10	10.1.5.47		Search Head	♀ site1	÷
	- 🗸 gemini-22f35f	10.1.5.45		Search Head	<b>Q</b> site1	:

Finally, select the '**Deploy**' button to create this Cluster using the information provided.

#### Verification of the Splunk Environment

Select **Splunk / Environments** from the vertical menu-bar at any time to obtain an overview.

SPLUNK > Splunk Environments	s						
Clusters Vodes				Q	• Build Environment	•	Add Node
Name	Туре	Site	Version		Contains	Last Job	
Appliance Cluster 01					2 Clusters	0	:
gemini-appliance-009		•	Splunk Enterprise 7.3.4			0	:
gemini-appliance-008		•	Splunk Enterprise 7.3.4			0	:
gemini-cluster-idxcluster	Indexer				3 Nodes	0	÷
gemini-appliance-001	Cluster Master	<b>Q</b> site1	Splunk Enterprise 7.3.4			0	:
gemini-appliance-002	Cluster Peer	♥ site1	Splunk Enterprise 7.3.4			0	:
gemini-appliance-003	Cluster Peer	<b>Q</b> site1	Splunk Enterprise 7.3.4			0	:
gemini-cluster-shcluster	Search Head				4 Nodes	0	:
gemini-appliance-004	SHC Deployer	♥ site1	Splunk Enterprise 7.3.4			0	:
gemini-appliance-007	SHC Member	♥ site1	Splunk Enterprise 7.3.4			0	:

Should you see anything other than the expected output here, you may need to destroy the cluster and re-attempt addition. Verify that you have entered the correct site references, which should all be set to '**site1**' if there is to be only one site present. Also ensure that you have entered the correct IP address for the Cluster Master when setting up a Search Head Cluster.

#### Add to Cluster

This option is used to expand the capacity of Splunk **Indexer** or **Search Head** Clusters. This process can be used for Gemini instances or remote Splunk Environments, although in both cases, Splunk should **NOT** be installed. The installation of Splunk is taken care of during integration to a Splunk Environment.

#### Add an additional Indexer or Search Head to a Splunk Cluster

Highlight the required node(s) from the **Unassigned Nodes** panel of the **Splunk Environments** dashboard.

Select the '**Add to Cluster**' button to invoke a three-step Wizard to bring Unassigned Nodes into a cluster with the correct settings.

Unassigned Nodes (1)							
Name	IP	Туре	Splunk Software	Site	Deployment Type	Status	
🧹 gemini-008	10.1.5.48	Software Appliance	Not Installed			🥥 :	-
ASSIGN TO ENVIRONMENT	ADD TO CLUSTER						
Note Splunk must not be installed on the <b>Unassigned Node</b> prior to being added to an existing Splunk cluster. Gemini Central will install the correct version of Splunk to the Node when it is added to the cluster.							g when

At **Step 1**, we need to add the Node(s) to the relevant **Splunk Environment**. If there is only one environment, this will already be highlighted, otherwise use the drop-down list for alternatives.

The site **name** will also need to be provided here. The default site name for a single-site cluster, or multi-site cluster acting as a single site, is '**site1**'.

In a multi-site environment, ensure you add all the sites, ie. site1, site2

Do not forget to select 'Enter' after adding each name to register it correctly.

Add Nodes to Cluster	1 Select Environment	2 Organize Nodes	3 Locate Nodes
<b>Environment Name</b> Specify a name to identify your Environment.	Appliance Splunk Cluster		~
<b>Available Sites</b> Add a comma-separated list of physical or logical locations. Assigning nodes to sites will be done at a later step.	site1 x acceptable sites: site1, site2,,	site63	

Select the 'Organize Nodes' button at the bottom, to reveal the following screen.

This Environment	Appliance Splunk Cluster							
<b>Available Nodes</b> Select unassigned nodes and assign them with the designated roles	• Add To Cluster							
	There are no available Nodes.							
Your Clusters	Name	Address	Model	Туре	Status			
Review the configuration and change the type if needed	gemini-app-idx-cluster1			Indexer	<b>I</b>			
	gemini-008	10.1.5.48		Indexer		:		
	gemini-app-shc-cluster1			Search Head	0			

At **Step 2**, select each node from the '**Available Nodes**' box and use the '**+ Add To Cluster**' button to assign them into the appropriate **Indexer** or **Search head Cluster**.

Verify the selection in the 'Your Clusters' panel.

Note that it only displays the nodes being added, it does not show nodes already inside the Cluster.

Select the 'Locate Nodes' button to display the following screen.

					+ Set Site
Vame	IP Address	Model	Туре	Site	
gemini-cluster-idx-01			Indexer		
- gemini-002	10.1.5.42		Master Node	Site1	
- gemini-003	10.1.5.43		Indexer	Site1	
- gemini-001	10.1.5.41		Indexer	Site1	
- 🔽 gemini-008	10.1.5.48		Indexer	<b>Q</b> site1	6 6

At **Step 3**, select the correct site name. Select the Node(s) with a checkmark, and use the '**+ Set Site**' button or the vertical **ellipsis icon** to set the correct site name.

This is usually '**site1**' for a single-site Cluster, or could be 'site2' if you are adding to a multi-site cluster.

Finally, select the '**Deploy**' button to carry out the addition of your Node(s) as instructed.

The following screen should verify the successful addition of your Node(s) into the appropriate Splunk Cluster. The current version of Splunk being used by Gemini Central is automatically installed to the new node(s) and all relevant Splunk cluster settings applied.

gemini-app-idx-cluster1	Indexer			4 Nodes	0	:
gemini-001	Cluster Master	<b>9</b> site1	Splunk Enterprise 7.3.1		0	÷
gemini-003	Cluster Peer	9 site1	Splunk Enterprise 7.3.1		0	:
gemini-002	Cluster Peer	♥ site1	Splunk Enterprise 7.3.1		0	:
gemini-008	Cluster Peer	♀ site1	Splunk Enterprise 7.3.1		0	:

Verify that Splunk has successfully integrated the new instance by observing the **Indexer Clustering** dashboard at the **Cluster Master** node, as shown below.

Indexer Clustering: Master I	Node		Edi	t   More Info  Document
✓ All Data is Searc	hable	✓ Search Factor is Met	Replica	tion Factor is Met
<b>3</b> searchab	le <b>O</b> not searchable Peers		3 searchable 0 not search Indexes	able
Peers (3) Indexes (3) Search Heads (4)				
filter Q 10 p	er page 🔻			
i Peer Name \$	Site \$	Fully Searchable \$	Status \$	Buckets \$ ?
> gemini-001	site1	√ Yes	Up	5454
> gemini-003	site1	✓ Yes	Up	5452
> gemini-008	site1	✓ Yes	Up	2120

If a new **Splunk Indexer** has been added to the cluster in order to expand the capacity of Splunk, it is recommended that you perform a '**Data Rebalance**' function located at the '**Edit**' button of this dashboard. This will distribute primary data buckets from other Indexer peers across to the new one, making the entire system more efficient. Note that this process will take some time to complete and have a slight impact on overall performance whilst being completed. For this reason, it is advised to complete Data Rebalancing during hours of low usage.

Also, if you have a Splunk **Monitoring Console** in use, any additional Node(s) will initially appear as a 'New' item and will need configuring. Navigate to the **Settings / General Setup** menu of the Monitoring Console and use the '**Edit**' button to verify any 'New' instances listed with its correct Server Roles. Complete the process by selecting the '**Apply Settings**' button. An example of this dashboard is shown below.

Edi	t Selecte	ed Instances 👻 25 Per Page										
i		Instance (host) ? \$	Instance (serverName) ? •	Machine ? \$	Server roles	Custom groups	Indexer Cluster(s)	Search Head Cluster(s)	Monitoring ? \$	State ? \$	Problems ¢	Actions
>		gemini-002	gemini-002	gemini-002	Indexer License Master		gemini-cluster-idx- 01		✓ Enabled	<ul> <li>Configured</li> </ul>		Edit 🝷
>		gemini-003	gemini-003	gemini-003	Indexer License Master		gemini-cluster-idx- 01		✓ Enabled	<ul> <li>Configured</li> </ul>		Edit 🔻
>		gemini-85693e	gemini-85693e	gemini-85693e	Indexer License Master		gemini-cluster-idx- 01		✓ Enabled	New		Edit 🝷

# New Instance install - Clusters and Standalone Instances

If this is a new instance installation, a **Splunk Environment** will first need to be created using the '**+ Build Environment**' button (top right of the screen). This will reveal a four-step wizard that enables the required detail to build the desired Splunk configuration.



A typical configuration includes the following stages:

- Step 1: Specify a Splunk Environment name, cluster arrangement, and Splunk binary version to be installed
- Step 2: Create a Splunk cluster for the environment.
- Step 3: Organize nodes into a cluster.
- Step 4: Specify the site name for the cluster.

Repeat the above to create additional Splunk Clusters.

For further information on this process, please refer to the **Building the Splunk Environment** section of this Administration Guide.

# Adopting remote Splunk Instances and Clusters

Nodes that have been added and listed as '**Unassigned Nodes'** may require the creation of a new **Splunk Environment**, especially if they have been added via **Gemini Agents**.

If a suitable environment does not already exist, create a '**shell environment**' to act as a new repository for external Splunk clusters. Once this environment has been created simply migrate the external Nodes and Clusters into this environment.

#### Creating a 'shell environment'

This process is similar to building a new environment, with the exception that we just create a 'shell' environment, minimum detail is therefore required.

Select the '**+ Build Environment**' button from the Splunk Environments screen of the Management Center.

• Deployment Type

Select 'Deploy Multi-Use Environment'

• Environment Name

Create a suitable name for the external Splunk cluster, maybe use words which locate the cluster, ie. Building 1, NY\_East, Remote\_SiteA. This is simply a label and can therefore include spaces etc.

• Available Sites

Enter the appropriate site names for this remote cluster. Typically, '**site1**' is used for a single-site cluster, multi-site clusters will have additional site names. Select '**enter**' to register each site here.

#### • Splunk Software

Select the version of Splunk required in this environment. Ideally, there should be only one Splunk version used in the entire environment. Note that the selected Splunk version will not take effect until the next upgrade operation.

Use the upload link provided to bring in a new Splunk binary.

Select the '**Organize Cluster**' button at the bottom of the dashboard to reveal the following screen, but make no changes here.

Create	onment	Organize Clusters	3 Organize Nodes
This Environment	<b>Gemini Cluster - Applianc</b> Splunk Enterprise v7.3.1	site1	
Organize Clusters Add as many clusters as neede for this environment.	• New Cluster		

Select the **'Organize Nodes**' button to progress to the '**Available Nodes**' dashboard where once again we make no changes.

Select the '**Locate Nodes**' button, leave all settings unchanged, and select the '**Deploy**' button to create our new Splunk Environment shell.

Return to the **Splunk Environments** dashboard to confirm the existence of a new **Splunk Environment**.

#### Assigning an external Splunk Cluster to an Environment

We now have a new **Splunk Environment** into which we can add our unassigned instances and Splunk Clusters.

Open the **Splunk Environments** dashboard from the **Management Center** and highlight the required **Unassigned Splunk Cluster(s)**.

Select the '**Add to Environment**' button to reveal a list of available Splunk Environments in the right-hand pane. Choose the appropriate environment, and select the '**Assign**' button to complete the process.

gemini-004	SHC Deployer	♥ site1	Splunk Enterprise 7.3.1	Assign Nodes to Environment
gemini-005	SHC Member	9 site1	Splunk Enterprise 7.3.1	
gemini-007	SHC Member	9 site1	Splunk Enterprise 7.3.1	Selected nodes will be assigned to the specified environment
gemini-006	SHC Member	♥ site1	Splunk Enterprise 7.3.1	Appliance Splunk Cluster     Remote Splunk Cluster
gemini-app-idx-cluster1	Indexer			

The **Splunk Environments** dashboard should now show the complete remote clusters inside our new Splunk Environment.

Remote Splunk Cluster				2 Clusters	<b>v</b>	:
splunk-sh1.geminidata.com		<b>\$</b>	Splunk Enterprise 7.3.3		<b>v</b>	:
splunk-ds.geminidata.com		<b>\$</b>	Splunk Enterprise 7.3.3		<b>v</b>	:
Remote_prod_SHC_01	Search Head			4 Nodes	<b>v</b>	:
splunk-dep.geminidata.com	SHC Deployer	♥ site2	Splunk Enterprise 7.3.3		<b>v</b>	:
splunk-sh2.geminidata.com	SHC Member	Site2	Splunk Enterprise 7.3.3		<b>v</b>	:
splunk-sh3.geminidata.com	SHC Member	♥ site2	Splunk Enterprise 7.3.3		<b>v</b>	:
splunk-sh4.geminidata.com	SHC Member	Site2	Splunk Enterprise 7.3.3		<b>v</b>	:
Remote_prod_IDXCluster	Indexer			5 Nodes	0	:
splunk-cm.geminidata.com	Cluster Master	♥ site1	Splunk Enterprise 7.3.3		<b>v</b>	:
splunkidx-01.geminidata.com	Cluster Peer	♥ site1	Splunk Enterprise 7.3.3		<b>v</b>	:
splunkidx-02.geminidata.com	Cluster Peer	♀ site1	Splunk Enterprise 7.3.3		<b>v</b>	:
splunkidx-03.geminidata.com	Cluster Peer	♥ site2	Splunk Enterprise 7.3.3		<b>v</b>	:
splunkidx-04.geminidata.com	Cluster Peer	♥ site2	Splunk Enterprise 7.3.3		<b>I</b>	:

#### Assigning Splunk Standalone Nodes

Select the required target '**Unassigned Nodes**' and then select the '**Assign to Environment**' button to assign them to a relevant environment.

#### Assigning a new remote Indexer or Search Head to a Cluster

Highlight the required target '**Unassigned Node(s**)' and select the '**Add to Cluster'** button to invoke the 3 stage wizard assigning them to a relevant cluster.

At this stage it is important the Splunk has **NOT** been installed to the node. Splunk will be installed as part of the Cluster integration process. See below for an example of the Unassigned Node before it can be assigned to a Cluster.

Unassigned Nodes (1)							
Name	IP	Туре	Splunk Software	Site	Deployment Type	Status	
splunk_spare	10.1.5.27	Gemini Agent	Not Installed			0	:

At **Step 1**, we need to add the Node(s) to the relevant **Splunk Environment**. From the drop-down list, select the appropriate 'Remote Splunk Environment'.

The site **name(s)** will also need to be provided here. The default site name for a single-site cluster, or multi-site cluster acting as a single site, is '**site1**'.

In a multi-site environment, ensure you add all the sites, ie. site1, site2

Do not forget to select 'Enter' after adding each name to register it correctly.

Environment Name		
Specify a name to identify your Environment.	Splunk Remote Cluster	~
Available Sites		
Add a comma-separated list of physical or logical locations. Assigning nodes to sites will be done at a later	site1 × site2 ×	
- +		

Select the 'Organize Nodes' button at the bottom, to reveal the following screen.

This Environment	Splunk Remote Cluster				
<b>Available Nodes</b> Select unassigned nodes and assign them with the designated roles		🔸 Ad	ld To Cluster		
	Name	IP Address	Model	Туре	
	✓ splunk_spare	10.1.5.27			:

At **Step 2**, select each node from the '**Available Nodes**' box and use the '**+ Add To Cluster**' button to assign them into the appropriate remote **Indexer** or **Search head Cluster**.

Verify the selection in the 'Your Clusters' panel.

Select the 'Locate Nodes' button to display the following screen.

Set Site

#### Locate Nodes

All Nodes have been automatically located to the first site. Adjust the local assignment as needed.

Name	IP Address	Model	Туре	Site	
Remote_prod_SHC			Search Head		
- splunk_dep	10.1.5.25		Deployer	•	
- splunk_sh2	10.1.5.22		Search Head	•	
- splunk_sh3	10.1.5.23		Search Head	•	
- splunk_sh4	10.1.5.24		Search Head	•	
- 🔲 splunk_spare	10.1.5.27		Search Head	•	:
Remote_prod_IDXCluster			Indexer		
- splunk_cm	10.1.5.193		Cluster Master	•	
- splunkidx_01	10.1.5.190		Cluster Peer	Site1	
- splunkidx_02	10.1.5.191		Cluster Peer	Site1	
- splunkidx_03	10.1.5.20		Cluster Peer	Site2	
- splunkidx_04	10.1.5.21		Cluster Peer	<b>Q</b> site2	

At **Step 3**, assign the correct site name. Select the Node(s) with a checkmark, and use the '**+ Set Site**' button or the vertical **ellipsis icon** to set the correct site name.

This is usually 'site1' for a single-site Cluster, or could be 'site2' if working in a mulit-site environment.

Finally, select the '**Deploy**' button to carry out the addition of your Node(s) as instructed.

The following screen should verify the successful addition of your Node(s) into the appropriate Splunk Cluster. The current version of Splunk being used by Gemini Central is automatically installed to the new node(s) and all relevant Splunk cluster settings applied.

gemini-app-idx-cluster1	Indexer			4 Nodes	0	:
gemini-001	Cluster Master	♥ site1	Splunk Enterprise 7.3.1		0	:
gemini-003	Cluster Peer	♥ site1	Splunk Enterprise 7.3.1		0	:
gemini-002	Cluster Peer	• site1	Splunk Enterprise 7.3.1		0	:
gemini-008	Cluster Peer	♥ site1	Splunk Enterprise 7.3.1		0	:

Verify that Splunk has successfully integrated the new instance by observing the **Indexer Clustering** dashboard at the **Cluster Master** node.

#### **Deploy Independent Stream Forwarder**

This feature has been deprecated.

#### **Operations and Administration of Splunk**

#### Splunk Environment Level Options

Several Splunk administrative tasks can be achieved centrally once resident in Gemini's **Management Center**. This includes both Gemini Central Splunk Environments and remote Splunk Environments controlled via Gemini Agents.

Use the vertical ellipsis menu located adjacent to the **Splunk Environment** name.

• **Rolling Upgrade** - Use this feature, to perform an upgrade of the Splunk software for all cluster members one-by-one. This will ensure that Splunk has minimal downtime.

Standalone nodes in the environment will also be upgraded in parallel.

• **Delete** - Delete the entire environment. All Splunk instances in this environment will be removed. This is a destructive option.

SFLORK > Splank Environment	3				
✓ Environments ✓ Clusters ✓ Nodes	Search for name,	IP	Q	🔸 Build Enviro	onment 🛛 📀 Add I
Name	Туре	Site	Version	Contains	Status
env-azQ8t				2 Clusters	
gnmi-008		9			Rolling Upgrade
gnmi-009		٢			Delete
gemini-cluster-cl-gG2Go	Search Head			4 Nodes	0

environment. If you want to keep the Splunk instances, first **'remove'** them before the Environment is deleted.

### Upgrading Splunk using the Rolling Upgrade Feature

#### Important notes to consider:

Notes

- Versions of Splunk within clusters should be consistent. Splunk should not be upgraded on individual instances, hence this feature.
- The recommended Splunk upgrade procedure is followed, where only one node will go down for upgrade at any one time. This may take a long time when the environment is large.
- The rolling upgrade is only available to clusters. Standalone nodes in the same environment will be upgraded in parallel when you begin a rolling upgrade.

- Care should be taken for specific upgrades especially before a major version upgrade, ie. 6.x to 7.x has specific requirements. Please check the Splunk documentation to understand the requirements. References for Version 8.0:
  - For a search head cluster: <u>https://docs.splunk.com/Documentation/Splunk/8.0.0/DistSearch/UpgradeaSHC</u>
  - For an indexer cluster: <u>https://docs.splunk.com/Documentation/Splunk/8.0.0/Indexer/Upgradeacluster</u>

#### Rolling Upgrade Procedure

Return to the **Splunk / Environments** dashboard and locate the Splunk Environment that you require to upgrade. This will include 'remote' Splunk Environments using Gemini Agents.

From the **vertical ellipsis** menu adjacent to the environment name, select the '**Rolling Upgrade**' option.

Enter the version of software you wish to use for the upgrade from the drop-down list, or use the '**Choose the file**' option to upload a new version of Splunk to the Management Center before selecting the '**Upgrade**' button

lunk Enterprise v8.0.0	~	
Drop package here o	r click to choose the file from your computer	
	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	
Extension must be	tar az or taz. Packaga must bal inuv v64	
Extension must be	tar.gz or tgz. Package must be Linux x64	
Extension must be	tar.gz or tgz. Package must be Linux x64	
Extension must be	tar.gz or tgz. Package must be Linux x64	

UPGRADE CANCEL

The Splunk Environment will be placed into '**Maintenance Mode**' during the process and upgraded on a one-by-one basis in the following order:

- Cluster Master
- Indexer Peers
- Deployer
- Search Heads

Monitor the **Indexer Clustering** Dashboard from the **Cluster Master** for more detail. Once all the instances have restarted, there may be a delay until replication settles down (see below). This is perfectly normal following an upgrade.

Indexer Clusteri	ng: Master Node					Edit • More Info • Documentation
√ All	Data is Searchable		A Search Factor	is Not Met	A Replicat	ion Factor is Not Met
	2 searchable 0	not searchable rs		3 searc	chable <b>0</b> not search Indexes	able
Peers (2) Indexes (3)	Search Heads (4)					
Bucket Status filter	r Q	10 per page 👻				
ndex Name ‡	Fully Searchable \$	Searchable Data Copies \$	Replicate	I Data Copies \$ Bucket	s ¢ °	Cumulative Raw Data Size \$
_audit	✓ Yes	2	2	5	<	0.01 GB
internal	✓ Yes	2	2	9	0	.10 GB

The Gemini Central Splunk Environments dashboard, should show the new Splunk version throughout.

#### Manual Upgrade of a Splunk Instance

This would not normally be required, as each Splunk instance should be part of an existing Splunk Environment benefiting from the 'Rolling Upgrade' feature. However there may be some circumstances where an upgrade is required on an individual instance.

Select the '**Upgrade Splunk**' icon from the **Splunk / Daemon** dashboard of the Management Center (see below). This will reveal the **Upload and install** panel enabling the option to upload a new version of Splunk.

SPLUNK > Daemon	Upload and Install			
Splunk Service Control	Upload Splunk File			
Stop Splunk     Restart Splunk     Upgrade Splunk     Splunk Instance       SPLUNK HOME     /opt/splunk       Version     Splunk 7.3.3 (build 7af3758d0d5e)	Click here to choose the tarball			
Boot-Start  Enable Splunk Boot-Start Enable BOOFSTART in order to start Splunk daemon automatically at boot time.	Choose V			

When the upload has been completed, an **Upload and Install** panel will be presented (see below)

If this node is the **Management Center**, you may not have Splunk currently installed, so you can ignore this '**Install**' panel and just select the '**Cancel**' button.

Complete the default **admin** user credentials as required and select the '**Install**' button to continue.

#### **Splunk Cluster Level Options**

Once the Splunk Environment has been built and deployed, the following administration tasks can be achieved using the vertical ellipsis menu located adjacent to the **Splunk Cluster** name.

- **Remove from Environment** This option will remove this cluster entirely from the current Splunk Environment. Individual Splunk instances will retain their configuration and data. The nodes can then be found in the Unassigned Nodes panel.
- **Destroy Cluster** The entire cluster will be deleted. All the installed Splunk instances in this cluster will be removed.
- **Remove from Cluster** This option is available from the vertical ellipsis menu for each specific node, which when used will remove it from the cluster. The Splunk instance on this node will also be removed.
- Generate Diag This option is available from the vertical ellipsis menu for each node, which when instigated will; request, run, and import a splunk diag from the instance concerned. The diags can be stored centrally at the Management Center and made available from the Splunk / Splunk Diag dashboard.

#### C3 辭 admir Ê SPLUNK > Splunk Environments HOME 📀 Build Environment 🛛 📀 Add Node Environments 🔽 Clusters 🔽 Nodes Q Name Site Version Contains Status Туре ÷ env-azQ8t 2 Clusters gnmi-008 Q : 0 anmi-009 : gemini-cluster-cl-gG2Go Search Head 4 Nodes Remove from gnmi-007 SHC Deployer 9 site1 Environment SHC Member anmi-006 9 site1 Destroy Cluster anmi-004 SHC Member 9 site1

#### Remove from Environment option

#### Remove from Cluster option

SPLUNK > Splunk Environme	nts					
✓ Environments ✓ Clusters ✓ Node	es Search for name	e, IP	Q	+ Build Environmer	it 🔸 Ad	d Nod
Name	Туре	Site	Version	Contains	Status	
env-azQ8t				2 Clusters	0	:
gnmi-009		٥	Splunk Enterprise 7.1.1		0	:
gnmi-008		•	Splunk Enterprise 7.1.1		0	:
gemini-cluster-cl-vhrh7	Indexer			3 Nodes	0	:
gnmi-003	Cluster Peer	♥ site1	Splunk Enterprise 7.1.1		0	,
gnmi-001	Cluster Master	♥ site1	Splunk Enterprise 7.1.1	Rei Clu	nove from ster	
gnmi-002	Cluster Peer	♥ site1	Splunk Enterprise 7.1.1		0	:
gemini-cluster-cl-gG2Go	Search Head			4 Nodes	0	:
gnmi-007	SHC Deployer	♀ site1	Splunk Enterprise 7.1.1		0	:

	Removing a node from an indexer cluster can take considerable time as it completes an elegant ' <b>offline</b> ' process. This process dictates that all data in the node will first be offloaded to other peer nodes, prior to it shutting down.
Notes	Removing a key role from a cluster is forbidden, e.g. Deployer and Cluster Master.
	It is also forbidden to remove members should this reduce their number below the minimum requirements for the cluster.

#### Splunk Standalone Options

Once the Splunk Environment has been built and deployed, the following administration tasks can be achieved using the vertical ellipsis menu located on each **Splunk Node**.

• Leave Environment - This will remove the standalone node from the Splunk Environment. It will then be re-assigned to the Unassigned Nodes panel. Splunk will not be removed from this node using this option.

ents des Search for na				
des Search for na				
	me, IP	Q	🔸 Build Environment	📀 Add Nod
Туре	Site	Version	Contains	Status
			2 Clusters	<b>&gt;</b> :
	٩	Splunk Enterprise 7.1.1		<b>0</b> ;
	9	Splunk Enterprise 7.1.1	Leav	e Environment
Indexer			3 Nodes	<b>&gt;</b> :
	Type	Type Site	Type         Site         Version           •         •         Splunk Enterprise 7.1.1           •         •         Splunk Enterprise 7.1.1           Indexer         •         •	Type     Site     Version     Contains       2 Clusters       Q     Splunk Enterprise 7.1.1       Q     Splunk Enterprise 7.1.1       Indexer     3 Nodes

#### **Unassigned Nodes Panel Options**

- **Assign to environment** This option will assign selected nodes into a specific Splunk Environment. For standalone nodes that do not have Splunk installed, Splunk installation will be performed when nodes are assigned into the environment. Useful to create ancillary Splunk instances, ie. Deployment Server
- **Create New Cluster** This option will create a new cluster from selected nodes in the Unassigned Nodes panel. This is achieved using a four-step wizard and can be used to create either an Indexer or Search Head Cluster for addition into an existing Splunk Environment.

If a new cluster is required in a new Splunk Environment, this will first need to be created.

• Add to Cluster - Add selected nodes into an existing cluster. Useful to expand the Indexer or Search Head cluster with additional nodes.

For full details of all the above operations, please refer to the <u>Assigning Unassigned Nodes and</u> <u>Clusters to a Splunk Environment</u> section of this Admin Guide.

							🏓 a
Unassigned Nodes (	(8)						
Name	IP	Туре	Splunk Software	Site	Deployment Type	Status	
🔽 gnmi-011	172.27.14.141	Software Appliance	Not Installed	-		0	:
🖌 gnmi-010	172.27.14.135	Software Appliance	Not Installed			0	:
gnmi-017	172.27.14.168	Software Appliance	Not Installed			0	:
gnmi-012	172.27.14.142	Software Appliance	Not Installed			0	:
gnmi-016	172.27.14.163	Software Appliance	Not Installed	-		0	:
gnmi-015	172.27.14.161	Software Appliance	Not Installed			0	:
gnmi-014	172.27.14.151	Software Appliance	Not Installed			0	:
gnmi-013	172.27.14.144	Software Appliance	Not Installed	-		0	:
ASSIGN TO ENVIE	RONMENT CREAT	E NEW CLUSTER ADD T	O CLUSTER				

# Gemini Agents

A **Gemini Agent** is stand-alone software installed to remote Splunk instances in order to use the management features and convenience of Gemini Central.

Your nominated **Management Center** can be used to administer and view all Gemini Agents alongside Manage instances.

Installing a Gemini Agent to an existing Splunk environment will enable the following benefits of **Gemini Central** software.

- Ability to create new Splunk indexer and Search Head clusters
- Ability to add/remove Splunk cluster members

- Ability to install, maintain and upgrade Splunk software from a central location.
- Ability to adopt existing Splunk instances and clusters

### Known Issues and Restrictions - Read before progressing

Customer installations of Splunk can vary and there can be certain configurations that will prevent the Gemini Agent from operating correctly. It is important that you read and understand these issues before you proceed with the Agent installation.

• If the **Cluster Master** and **Deployer** are sharing the same instance, adoption of the remote cluster will fail.

For further details on this issue, or if you are unsure about the suitability of your remote installation of Splunk, please contact <u>support@geminidata.com</u>

### Splunk Interface Detail

A **Gemini Agent** is designed to be installed on a target host over tcp port 4444. It can be installed by a standard user, ie. user=splunk, providing this account has elevated privileges enabling installation of the agent. The presence and location of Splunk, will be discovered automatically during installation.

# Prerequisites for Installation

#### Supported Operating Systems

Currently, only the Linux OS is supported by the **Gemini Agent**. The supported Linux OS must meet the following criteria:

- x86 64bit architecture.
- Linux 3.x and 4.x kernel version.
- systemd used as system and service management

The following Linux distributions have been tested and are therefore recommended:

- RHEL 7
- CentOS 7
- Ubuntu 18.04 LTS
- Ubuntu 19.10
- Debian 10

```
Note
```

e The Gemini Agent is not currently available for Windows OS.

#### System Requirements on the Target Host

The following resources are required by Gemini Agent:

- Memory: 20 MB RAM
- Disk Space: 200 MB

Minimum resource recommended for the system environment:

- Memory: 4 GB RAM
- Disk Space: 1GB (required for installation and temp space during upgrades)

• Access to port 4444 from the Management Center instance.

An account with privileged access is required for **Gemini Agent** installation and service control, this will be determined during installation.

Note It is highly recommended that the host is running time synchronization, ie. NTP service
--

Verify that your Splunk host has the above dependencies before continuing with the installation of a **Gemini Agent** on your target machine.

# Installation of Gemini Agent

The Gemini Agent installation can only take place if the Management Center is operating at Version 2.7 or higher, and the **agent distribution** mechanism has been enabled.

- Step 1 The agent distribution system is enabled at the Gemini Management Center
- Step 2 Includes prerequisites for a successful installation of the agent on the host machine.
- Step 3 Describes the agent installation process itself.

#### Step 1: Management Center - Enable Gemini Agent distribution

The ability to distribute **Gemini Agents** is disabled at the Management Center by default.

To enable the Gemini Agent distribution feature and receive confirmation of the download URI;

Login at the terminal interface of your **Management Center** instance using the '**sbox**' account, and type the following command;

sbox agent --download-link

This will return the **download URI** link which can be used at any remote instance. Be sure to copy this for easy reference. Naming convention of the agent includes the date of release and the version number as follows; gemini-agent-<**YY**>.<**MM**>-<**Ver**>

```
[sbox@gemini-1c8d22 ~]$ sbox agent --download-link
https://10.2.x.x:4444/download/agent/gemini-agent-20.06-15.tar.gz
```

#### Step 2: Gemini Agent - Prerequisites (Splunk Host)

There are a number of checks to make to ensure that this is a suitable environment for Splunk and the Gemini Agent to work effectively.

- Ensure the Management Center has the Gemini Agent feature enabled (Step 1)
- Ensure that port 4444 is an allowed port
- Ensure that this instance conforms to an **NTP** standard or similar (Splunk best practice)

Login at your chosen Splunk host(Linux), as the **Splunk** owner account for this purpose, and **sudo** if elevated privileges are required.

Verify that the firewall on this host device is either non active or allows TCP in/out on **Port 4444** using a combination of the following commands

```
systemctl status firewalld
```

Use either of these commands to verify open ports or to verify the route through to the Management Center

```
netstat: netstat -na (check for 0.0.0.0:4444 LISTEN)
nmap utility: nc -vz <ip address of management center> 4444
```

Note: you may need to install net-tools or nmap to use these commands.

Verify that this instance is using a suitable form of **time synchronization**, vital for Splunk. Investigate whether the NTP service is running and the contents of the ntp.conf file in use and if necessary start the **ntpd** service. Use the following commands to assist with this;

```
systemctl status ntpd.service
cat /etc/ntp.conf
systemctl start ntpd.service
```

For assistance with any of the above prerequisites, please refer to your SysAdmin, or contact <a href="mailto:support@geminidata.com">support@geminidata.com</a>

#### Step 3: Installing the Gemini Agent - Splunk Host

From the terminal of the Splunk host machine, navigate to the *lopt* directory and using **curl**, transfer the **gemini-agent** tarball from the Management Center using the download-link URI (refer to Step 1)

```
cd /opt
curl -k -O <Download-Link URI>
```

```
ie. curl -k -0
https://10.2.70.65:4444/download/agent/gemini-agent-20.06-15.tar.gz
```

Alternatively, download the **gemini-agent** tarball from the Management Center instance and use scp to copy it to the /opt/ directory of your Splunk host

Unpack the **gemini-agent** tarball into a suitable destination folder, we recommend using the **/opt** directory as shown below which will unpack the Gemini Agent into the **/opt/gemini** folder.

```
tar -zxvf gemini-agent-<YY>.<MM>-<Ver>.tar.gz -C /opt
```

Run the following command with **root** privilege to complete the installation:

```
sudo /opt/gemini/agent/bin/agent start
```

Two possible output screens will follow depending on whether Splunk has already been installed on the instance.

#### If Splunk is either not installed or not running;

The Gemini Agent automatically detects that Splunk is non-operational. It proceeds to create a gemini service on the instance, and then prompts for further information regarding Splunk;

```
+ Generate UUID...
+ Creating SystemD service...
+ Configuring...
Has Splunk installed? [yes]:
```

• Has Splunk installed? [yes]:

Select 'no' as a response here.

• Installed \$SPLUNK\_HOME? [/opt/splunk]:

Select 'enter' to confirm that this will be the Splunk install directory, or provide an alternative.

#### If Splunk is already installed and running;

The Gemini Agent detects the presence and location of Splunk automatically and prompts only for confirmation of the required admin account and password.

```
+ Configuring...
+ Splunk is running by splunk
+ Splunk home is /opt/splunk
Splunk admin user [admin]:
```

- Splunk admin user [admin]: Select 'enter' to confirm the user 'admin' or provide another account with admin rights.
- Splunk admin password: Type the password for the above account.

On receipt of a valid password, the screen should resemble the example below.

Splunk admin password:

- + Configuration set successfully
- + Gemini Agent is running.

#### Gemini Agent - CLI options at the Splunk host

#### agent status

If at any time you want to verify whether the **Gemini Agent** service is active, use the following command;

sudo /opt/gemini/agent/bin/agent status

A typical response from this command would be the following message

```
+ Gemini Agent is running.
```

#### agent --version

If at any time you wish to know which **Gemini Agent** version is active on this instance, run the following command;

sudo /opt/gemini/agent/bin/agent --version

The output will return the date and version of the Agent in the format: <YY>.<MM>-<Version>

#### agent restart

If you wish to restart the existing Gemini Agent service, run the following command;

```
sudo /opt/gemini/agent/bin/agent restart
```

#### agent configure

If you wish to go through the initial Gemini Agent configuration script again, for instance if the local Splunk admin password has been changed, run the following command;

```
sudo /opt/gemini/agent/bin/agent configure
```

#### agent uninstall

If for any reason you need to uninstall the **Gemini Agent** use the following command. Note that in order to upgrade the Gemini Agent it is first required that the existing Gemini Agent is first uninstalled.

sudo /opt/gemini/agent/bin/agent uninstall

#### agent stop/start

If you need to stop or start the agent manually, use the following commands;

```
sudo /opt/gemini/agent/bin/agent stop
sudo /opt/gemini/agent/bin/agent start
```

The above process is also applicable to host machines without Splunk already installed. Splunk will be installed with the attributes specified during the Gemini Agent configuration.

When **Gemini Agents** have been installed in your host Splunk environment successfully, it is possible to register these as '**Unassigned Nodes**' in the **Splunk Environments** section of the **Management Center**.

This can be achieved using the '**+ Add Node button**' and adding them as a; standalone node, Indexer Cluster, or Search Head Cluster, using one of the supplied **JSON** or **CSV Manifest** templates.

For full details on this process, refer to the <u>Adopting external Splunk Instances and Clusters</u> section.

For details on other features and functions available for Splunk remote instances and clusters, such as upgrading Splunk, refer to the <u>Operations and Administration of Splunk</u> section.
## **Gemini Agent - Troubleshooting**

For any local issues regarding the Gemini Agent on the Splunk host, the CLI commands above should help.

If required, more assistance can be obtained from log files in the **/opt/gemini/agent/admin/var/log** directory.

For issues regarding the ingestion of Splunk Clusters using JSON Manifest files, locate the **FATAL.log** file found on the **Management Center** instance in the **/var/log/gemini/admin/** directory.

## Upgrading the Gemini Agent

Gemini Agents may need to be upgraded when new features are required. Gemini Data will issue new Gemini Agent binaries from time-to-time announced in our <u>Support Portal</u> and can be obtained on request.

On receipt of a new agent binary, navigate to the **Cluster / Manage Nodes** menu at the **Gemini Management Center.** 

Scroll down to the last section titled, **Gemini Agent Binary**, and select the '+ **Upload Agent Binary**' button to locate and add the binary file to the Management Center for distribution.

Once the new binary is present on the Management Center, the following process should be carried out at each remote Splunk node.

Step 1: Login to the console of your remote Splunk agent host using SSH.

Stop and uninstall the existing Gemini Agent using the following command:

sudo /opt/gemini/agent/bin/agent uninstall

A confirmation screen should follow to confirm that the agent has been removed;

Step 2: At the **/opt** directory, use 'curl' to obtain the latest binary from the **Management Center**.

Substitute the latest <agent\_binary> with your filename in the following command;

```
cd /opt
curl -k -0
https://<Management_center>:4444/download/agent/<agent_binary>
ie. curl -k -0
https://10.2.70.65:4444/download/agent/gemini-agent-20.06-15.tar.gz
```

**Step 3:** Unpack the **gemini-agent** tarball into a suitable destination folder, we recommend the **/opt** directory as shown below which will unpack the Gemini Agent into the **/opt/gemini** folder.

tar -zxvf gemini-agent-<agent-version>.tar.gz -C /opt

**Step 4:** Run the following command with **root** privilege to complete the installation:

sudo /opt/gemini/agent/bin/agent start

The Gemini Agent detects the presence and location of Splunk automatically, and prompts only for confirmation of the required admin account and password.

```
+ Configuring...
+ Splunk is running by splunk
+ Splunk home is /opt/splunk
Splunk admin user [admin]:
```

• Splunk admin user [admin]:

Select 'enter' to confirm the user 'admin' or provide another account with admin rights.

• Splunk admin password:

Type the password for the above account.

On receipt of a valid password, the screen should resemble the example below.

Splunk admin password: + Configuration set successfully + Gemini Agent is running. Refer to the <u>Installation of Gemini Agent</u> section for more details if required. The latest details and information on Gemini Agents can be obtained from;

http://support.geminidata.com/docs support@geminidata.com

# Settings

The **Settings** menu allows you to view important information and control how Gemini Central behaves.

It also controls Gemini software upgrades, handles authentication options, including password policy enforcement, and enables reboot or shutdown operations.

- System Admin How to add an SSL cert, complete backups, and generate diags
- System Upgrade Instructions to install Gemini Central upgrade packs
- Information Version information on Gemini software and hardware
- Authentication Control User accounts, User Roles, LDAP and SSO settings.
- **Password Policy** Enables the setting of specific password criteria.
- HTTP Proxy Allows the use of a proxy server for specific tasks.
- Login Banner Allows the sending of a broadcast message to all connected users
- Reboot & Shutdown

## System Admin

- Admin Web
- Backup and restore
- Diagnose

## Admin Web

Allows the installation of a 'custom SSL cert' which can be used to comply with your existing enterprise security policy.

#### SETTINGS > System Admin > Admin Web

Admin Web Settings	
1 Install Custom SSL Certificate	
Listening Port	
443	
Language	
English (United States)	~
SAVE	

To use a SSL certificate from an external PKI, select the 'Install Custom SSL Certificate' button.

#### Install Custom SSL Certificate

SSL Private Key	
SSL Certificate Chain	
Add the complete Certificate Chain including the Root-, Intermediate- and Server Certificates in PEI the following order:	V format using
1. Root Certificate (optional) 2. Intermediate Certificate(s) (optional) 3. Server Certificate	
	1.

Paste the **Private Key** as a Base64 encoded DER - PEM certificate - to the '**SSL Private Key**' field, and the certificate in the field below, again PEM formatted.

**Certificate Chain** is supported, including **Root** and **Intermediate** Certificates of related Certificate Authorities. To use this option, paste the entire chain into this area in the correct order as shown below:

- 1. Root Certificate (if present)
- 2. Intermediate Certificate (if present)
- 3. Server Certificate



Select the '**Apply**' button to install the certificates.

The Manage web interface will restart, and the new certificate will be presented. In some cases, it will be necessary to refresh the browser window (F5).

For security reason, the following certificate guidelines are recommended;

- Certificate length; at least 2048, preferably 4096.
- Key pairs are generated usingAES256.
- Signed with SHA-2(SHA-256 or SHA-384), no SHA-1, no MD5

## Backup & Restore

It is important that the configuration detail and license information is secured with a backup. This is especially important following initial installation or following an upgrade.

Use the 'Download Backup File' button to complete the backup. We would recommend the (Select All Packages) option.

SETTINGS > S	System	Admin	>	Backup	&	Restore
--------------	--------	-------	---	--------	---	---------

Download Backup File	
✓ (Select All Packages)	
System Settings	
✓ License	
Splunk Manager	
Other Settings	
DOWNLOAD BACKUP FILE	
Upload & Restore	
	Click here to choose file.
	🙆 Upload
	-

### Diagnose

Use this option when directed by Gemini Support. This will give the support team a full view of the Gemini Central environment and status aiding a speedy resolution of a support issue.

If Manage is installed on a Dell Appliance, a separate Dell diagnostic file will also be available to send to support.

SETTINGS	>	System	Admin	>	Diagnose

System Diagnose Files
+ Generate System Diagnostic File
Hardwara Diagnostic Filo
natuwate Diagnostic File
+ Create Dell System E-Support Tool Report

# System Update

Use this option to upgrade your Manage software with Update Packs or full Manage Upgrades, as directed by Gemini Support.

Please contact Gemini Support, <u>support@geminidata.com</u> for confirmation of suitability of any Update pack or Manage Upgrade or any other questions or issues related to updating Manage.

Updating older versions of Manage to the latest version should definitely be referred to Gemini Support as there are certain upgrade paths that need to be followed.

A full history of Upgrade Packs installed to this instance will be listed on this dashboard.

## Information

Information displayed here details software and hardware information from your Gemini Central instance.

- Software
- Hardware
- Listen Port
- Audit Report

## Software

Here you may review the currently installed software versions of

- Gemini Central version
- Linux kernel version
- Java version

## SETTINGS > Information > Software

## Software Version

Appliance	2.7-266
Linux Kernel	3.10.0-1062.4.3.el7.x86_64
JAVA	java version "1.8.0_192" Java(TM) SE Runtime Environment

## **Environment Variable**

JAVA_HOME	/usr/lib/jvm/jre/
JAVA Directory	/usr/lib/jdk1.8.0_192

## Hardware

Detailed hardware information on your Gemini instance hardware includes:

- CPU
- Memory
- NIC
- Chassis

SE	SETTINGS > Information > Hardware				
	CPU				
	Model Name	Intel(R) Xeon(R) Gold 6130 CPU @ 2.10GHz			
	Architecture	x86_64			
	CPU(s)	12			
	Core(s) per socket	1			
	Memory				
	Virtual Machine				
	Network Interfa	ace Controllers			
	eth0	VMware VMXNET3 Ethernet Controller (rev 01) Capacity: 10000baseT			
	Chassis				
	Service Tag	VMware-42 14 bc 66 88 13 51 7d-b7 f9 93 54 f1 1c ec e3			
	Model Name	vmware			
	UEFI	False			

## Listen Port

This shows the entire list of ports that are currently open on the Manage instance for protocols specified,

SETTINGS >	Information >	Listen Port
------------	---------------	-------------

Listening Ports		
Protocol	Local Address	Port
TCP		443
TCP		4444
TCP		8797
TCP		35273
TCP		9321
TCP	127.0.0.1	8686
TCP		111
TCP		22
TCP		8888
TCP	#	8889
TCP	#	41455
TCP	#	111
TCP	#	22
TCP	::ffff:127.0.0.1	59000

This information may be requested by Gemini Support to assist with your support case.

## Audit Report

The Audit Report tab allows you to create downloadable audit reports which will include a list of all the libraries that Gemini Central use together with their version.

The current listening ports will also be included within the report.

## Authentication

**Gemini Central** offers administration access either via the web console or by running CLI commands following a successful SSH login.

- Manage User
- User Permissions
- LDAP
- Single sign-on

## Manage User

Controls access to the Manage web interface. Configure as many local 'Admin' (Supervisor) accounts as required.

Other Roles such as **Splunk Users**, **Splunk Admins** and **Manage Users** can also be created here.

Passwords will need to comply with the **Password Policy** (see section below)

Language choices for users consist of English, Chinese, German and Japanese.

SETTINGS >	Authentication > Manage User			Manager User - admin
				Current Password
Manag	ge User Accounts			
				Password
+ Creat	te User			
	Username	Full Name	Role	
	admin	admin	Supervisor	Confirm Password
				Role
				Supervisor V
				Avatar
				🕞 🐡 🐣 🌑 🥌 😵
				Advanced Settings
				Forever 120 30 10 5
				Language
				System 🗸

## **User Permissions**

This enables you to add to the existing **User Role** templates available in Gemini Central. Each of these built-in Roles has unique user permissions set to control behavior and access across Manage. Additional Roles can be created to inherit existing permissions using these templates, or with customized permissions.

SETTINGS > Authentication > User Permissions		
User Role		
• Create Role		
User Role	Default	Applied Users
Cloudera Admin	Yes	0
Group Admin	Yes	0
Manager Admin	Yes	0
Gemini Manager Auditor	Yes	0
Manager User	Yes	0
Splunk Admin	Yes	0
Splunk User	Yes	0
Supervisor	Yes	1

By selecting an existing **User Role**, a panel will be opened allowing you to edit permissions for various aspects of Manage.

Permissions			
LICENSE			
License Status	<ul> <li>None</li> </ul>	Read	Write
Remote Licenses	<ul> <li>None</li> </ul>	Read	<ul> <li>Write</li> </ul>
Inventory	<ul> <li>None</li> </ul>	Read	<ul> <li>Write</li> </ul>
License Server	<ul> <li>None</li> </ul>	Read	Write
SYSTEM			
System Time	<ul> <li>None</li> </ul>	Read	Write
Timezone	<ul> <li>None</li> </ul>	◯ Read	O Write
Name	<ul> <li>None</li> </ul>	◯ Read	O Write
Network	<ul> <li>None</li> </ul>	◯ Read	Write
FTP	None	Read	<ul> <li>Write</li> </ul>
SAVE	CANCEL		

## Notes regarding the setting of permissions:

- If Gemini Central is upgraded from versions prior to Manage 2.4, existing users will be granted 'Supervisor' rights following the upgrade.
- One role needs to be applied to each Manage user.
- If using LDAP authentication, specify a default role for each LDAP resource.
- The Roles of 'Supervisor' and 'Manage User' are default roles that cannot be removed.
- A Role may be deleted only if there are no users assigned to that role.
- Permission of 'Read' allows the user read-only access to the status and settings, no other actions are permitted.
- A permission of 'Write' also implies 'Read'.

## LDAP

If desired a link to an existing LDAP resource may be established here to support LDAP authentication for the Manage interface. When LDAP resources are configured successfully, users will be able to login to Gemini Central using their LDAP account.

Note that Gemini Central connects using simple BIND and Search/Bind requests and LDAP server access is only used for authentication not for accessing roles or permissions.

Use the toggle slider to enable LDAP authentication if required.

SETTINGS > Authentication > LDAP			
LDAP Authentication Control			
Enable LDAP Authentication Authenticate user by LDAP server.			
LDAP Resource			
	There is no LDAP resource currently configured.   Add LDAP Resource		

Configure an LDAP resource using **Simple BIND**, as follows;

- 1. Select the 'Add LDAP Resource' button to create a new LDAP resource.
- 2. Configure the **Host** and **Port**, use FQDN (not the IP address). Enable SSL if needed.
- 3. Select Simple BIND.
- 4. Carefully configure the **User BaseDN**. The BaseDN should be able to locate users who can access Manage. You may want to create a special LDAP group for this.
- 5. Configure the **Login Attribute**. This should be a real attribute that currently exists within the LDAP directory and can be used for a Manage account username, ie. uid, CN or name.

Configure **Role**. Select a default User Role for new Manage users to be assigned during LDAP authentication.



Please ensure that your BaseDN includes only those users who should have access to the instance administration screens.

The following example shows an LDAP connection profile for a group of Gemini Central users;

*New Feature:* The addition of the '**Validate Connection**' button will be a welcome addition to this process

Create LDAP Resource
LDAP_Manage_users
Connection
Host
ad server1 arms com
Port
389
Create LDAP Resource
SSL SSL
LDAP Authentication
Simple Bind Search/Bind
User Name
admin
Dassword
User DN Template
uid=\$(username),ou=it_dept, dc=acme, dc=com
Ling Page DN
ou=it_dept, dc=acme, dc=com
Login Attribute
uid
Role
upun uau .

Configure an LDAP resource using the alternative **Simple BIND**, as follows;

1. Select the 'Add LDAP Resource' button to create a new LDAP resource.

- 2. Configure the **Host** and **Port**, use FQDN (not IP address). Enable SSL if needed.
- 3. Select Search/BIND.
- 4. Configure the **Lookup DN** and **Lookup Password**. This is used to login to the LDAP server and fetch the LDAP trees. The whole LDAP tree will be cached on the system for further use.
- 5. Carefully configure the **User BaseDN**. The BaseDN should be for users who can access Manage. You may want to create a special LDAP group for this.
- 6. Configure the User Search Filter.
- 7. Configure the **Login Attribute**. The login attribute should be a real attribute that exists within the LDAP directory and can be used for a Manage account username, ie. uid, CN or name.
- 8. Configure **Role**. Select a default User Role for new Manage users to be assigned during LDAP authentication.
- 9. Select the 'Validate Connection' button for a real-time connection check to verify the settings.

## Single Sign-on (SSO)

Gemini Central Single Sign-on (SSO) provides the ability to use an HTTP Reverse Proxy Server to handle Manage authentication. Once a user is successfully logged into the proxy, they can access the Manage interface without having to login directly.

Gemini Central expects a specific HTTP Request Header from the Reverse Proxy. The name of the HTTP Header field can be configured in the Single Sign-On configuration screen.

Select the '**Automatically Create User**' option when the username from an authenticated request through the Reverse Proxy does not exist as a local Manage admin user. If this option is not selected and the username from the request does not exist in Manage, the request will fail and the Manage login prompt will be shown.

For added security, authentication requests can be restricted to a specific set of IP addresses, and only requests having the Username Field in the HTTP Header.

## SETTINGS > Authentication > Single Sign-On



Once SSO is authenticated, it will take precedence over other authentication methods such as LDAP.

# Password Policy

Setting a **Password Policy** allows you to enforce password requirements to meet your security needs including complexity and duration before a due reset.

## SETTINGS > Password Policy

Password	complexity
Minimum pas Prevent passu Require at lea Require at lea Require at lea Require at lea Require at lea Require less t Require less t	esword length: 1 6 word reuse - Number of characters must be changed. 1 est one number. 1 est one number. 1 est one upper-case character. 1 est one lower-case character. 1 est one lower-case character. 1 est one non-alphanumeric characters. 1
Password	Duration
✓ Password exp	piration period (in days) 👔 60
✓ Number of us	ed passwords to remember 1
APPLY	
Note	Password complexity applies to both Web admins and OS users. Password duration only applies to OS users.

## HTTP Proxy

This allows you to set a Proxy Server for specific services, ie. to connect to the Tableau website.

SETTINGS > HTTP Proxy
HTTP Proxy Control
Enable HTTP Proxy This will enable/disable the usage of a Proxy for outgoing connections to download packages for integration Center and Clouder This will enable/disable the usage of a Proxy for outgoing connections to download packages for integration Center and Clouder
Additional Settings
Protocol
http 🗸
Proxy Server Hostmarne or IP Address of Proxy Server
example.com
Port Number of Proxy Server
80
Usemame Usemame for authenticated Proxy Requests
Password Password for authenticated Proxy Requests
SAVE

## Login Banner

Use this to enable and edit the banner message presented to users when accessing either the instance web interface or access via SSH.

This could be used to send out a broadcast message about upcoming maintenance for example.

Simply type your message in the box provided. Do not forget to remove the message when it is no longer appropriate.

Prompt Login Banner Message Display message when OS user log in system through console and terminal session.
Banner Content
SAVE

## Reboot

Allows you to reboot your Gemini instance immediately. Selecting this option will bring up the following splash screen, enabling you to '**cancel**' if this was done in error.



## Shutdown

Allows you to shutdown and power off your Gemini instance immediately.

Note that Splunk services will be stopped prior to shutdown in order to prevent unexpected errors.

Selecting this option will bring up the following splash screen, enabling you to '**cancel**' if this was done in error.



# **CLI** Commands

Gemini Central supports a series of shell commands that can be executed locally from a terminal.

Authentication using one of two built-in User accounts (see <u>Default Passwords for CLI Operations</u> for details) is required in order to use these commands over SSH.

We recommend that you use the '**sbox**' OS user account for the majority of the commands listed here.

For **Splunk** specific issues, you should use the **'splunk**' OS user account.

Once authenticated, simply type '**sbox**' at the command prompt for an overview of the **top-level** commands available in Gemini Central as shown below.

sbox		

Usage: sbox [OPTIONS] [COMMAND]		
[OPTIONS]		
version	Show Gemini Central version.	
service-tag	Display service tag of server.	
model	Display model name of server.	
[COMMAND]		
help	Display help for each of command.	
admin	Configure Gemini Centralr.	
agent	Manage Gemini Agent.	
config	Configure appliance.	
diag	Generate diag information.	
isf	Control Independent Stream Forwarder service.	
license	Manage Gemini Central license.	
network	Setup for specific network interface.	
server	Manage appliance server to reboot or shutdown.	
service	Control services.	
splunk	Manage Splunk deployed on current node.	
system	Display system information and patch.	

## The help Command

To display more detail regarding the top-level commands use the 'help' command;

sbox help

Usage: sbox admin [OPTIONS]			
[OPTIONS]			
reset-password Reset pas	sword of web UI admin user.		
-set-password Set passw	ord for web UI admin user.		
gen-ssl Regenera	te SSL keys for web server.		
installed-packages Display in	stalled packages in web server.		
skip-wizard Skip the s	setup wizard on access.		
restart Restart sl	oox-admin service.		
Usage: sbox agent [OPTIONS]			
[OPTIONS]			
download-link Enable Ag	ent distribution and display the download URI.		
Usage: sbox config [OPTIONS]			
[OPTIONS]        accept-eula       To accept End User License Agreement.         -hostname       Set hostname.         -timezone       Set system timezone.        trial-license       Start trial license for web admin.         -license-file       Import license file.         Argument: <path_to_license_file>         -license-server       Indicate remote license server.         Argument: <server_host>:<token_string></token_string></server_host></path_to_license_file>			
Usage: sbox diag [OPTIONS]			
[OPTIONS] generate Generate diagr	nostics zip file.		
Usage: sbox license [OPTIONS]			
[OPTIONS]trial-licenserevoke-trial-license-file-license-server-license-serverIndicate remotArgument: <se< td=""></se<>	nse for Gemini Central. cense. file. ath_to_license_file> e license server. erver_host>: <token_string></token_string>		
Usage: sbox network [OPTIONS]			

[OPTIONS] reset -nic	Reset all Setup sp	network interfaces to their default value. ecific network interface, required for	
disable	the optio Disable s dhcp, -	ns below specific NIC, when given it ignores ip, -netmask and -gateway options.	
dhcp	Config th	ne specific NIC as DHCP.	
-ıp -netmask	Set IP ad	et mask for specific NIC, required when	
	set IP ad	ldress.	
-gateway	Set gate	way on specific NIC. (optional param).	
Usage: sbox servi	Usage: sbox service [OPTIONS]		
[OPTIONS] reboot shutdown	Reboot s Shutdov	server. vn server.	
Usage: sbox servi	Usage: sbox service [OPTIONS]		
[OPTIONS] status listen-port restart	Display Display t Restart a	status of services. he listening ports of services. all services.	
Usage: sbox splunk [OPTIONS]			
[OPTIONS] kill reset_environments backup_setting <file> restore_setting <file></file></file>		Remove Splunk instance. Clean up Splunk environment settings. Backup Splunk settings. Restore Splunk settings.	
Usage: sbox system [OPTIONS]			
[OPTIONS]			
info -patch <file_pat< td=""><td>th&gt;</td><td>Display system information. Apply patch file with <file_path>.</file_path></td></file_pat<>	th>	Display system information. Apply patch file with <file_path>.</file_path>	

## Commands for initial setup

## The network Command

The '**sbox network**' command allows you to complete the basic network settings, including both DHCP and static network settings.

We recommend that you create a permanent static IP address for Gemini Central.

If necessary, identify the name of the device network interface using the following command at the terminal:

ip a

Output from this command is shown below to reveal in this case; an **interface name** of '**nic0**', and current **ip address** of **192.168.1.100**.

```
[sbox@sboxnodel ~]$ ip a
1: lo: <LOOPBACK,UP,LOWER_UP> mtu 65536 qdisc noqueue state UNKNOWN
    link/loopback 00:00:00:00:00 brd 00:00:00:00:00
    inet 127.0.0.1/8 scope host lo
      valid_lft forever preferred_lft forever
    inet6 ::1/128 scope host
      valid_lft forever preferred_lft forever
2: nic0: <BROADCAST,MULTICAST,UP,LOWER_UP> mtu 1500 qdisc pfifo_fast state UP qlen 1000
      link/ether 08:00:27:9e:96:c0 brd ff:ff:ff:ff:ff
    inet 192.168.1.100/24 brd 192.168.1.255 scope global dynamic nic0
      valid lft 68091sec preferred lft 68091sec
```

If you wish to configure or change the **static network** settings, use the following command;

sbox network -nic <network\_interface\_name> -ip <ip\_address>
-netmask <netmask> -gateway <gateway ip>

An example of setting the Network Interface 'nic0' to create a static ip address is shown below;

```
sbox network -nic nic0 -ip 192.168.1.100 -netmask 255.255.255.0
-gateway 192.168.1.1
```

Alternatively, if you wish to configure the network interface to use **DHCP** use the following command;

sbox network -nic <network interface name> --dhcp

For security reasons, consider omitting the **-gateway** param for a host-only IP address that has no access to the Public environment.

A summary of the '**network'** command and options is given below, and can be shown at the terminal at any time by typing '**sbox network**'.

Usage: sbox network [OPTIONS]			
[OPTIONS] reset	Reset all network interface to default value.		
disable	below options. Disable specific NIC, when given it ignores		
dhcp -ip	dhcp, -ip, -netmask and -gateway options. Config the specific NIC as DHCP. Set IP address for specific NIC.		
-netmask	Set subnet mask for specific NIC, required when set IP address.		

## The config Command

In addition to the '**network**' command, the '**config**' command provides additional configuration at deployment, such as setting the instance hostname and timezone. This would normally be set up in the **Manage UI**, but this offers an alternative.

It can also be used to apply a Licence file, and set a Licence Server.

A summary of the '**config'** command and options is given below, and can be shown at the terminal at any time by typing '**sbox config**'.

Usage: sbox config [OPTIONS]		
[OPTIONS] accept-eula -hostname -timezone trial-license -license-file	To accept End User License Agreement. Set hostname. Set system timezone. Start trial license for web admin. Import license file. Argument: <pre>cpath_to_license_file&gt;</pre>	
-license-server	Indicate remote license server. Argument: <server_host>:<token_string></token_string></server_host>	

Note

Note that the license file has to be uploaded to the instance before it can be applied.

## The admin Command (setup options)

This command can be used to control the **Manage web interface** administration. This includes resetting a custom installed SSL certificate or disabling the web-based setup wizard when all settings have been applied using the CLI.

A summary of the '**admin'** command and options is given below, and can be shown at the terminal at any time by typing '**sbox admin**'.

Usage: sbox admin [OPTIONS]				
[OPTIONS]	[OPTIONS]			
reset-password	Reset password of web admin user.			
-set-password	Set password for web admin user.			
gen-ssl	Regenerate SSL keys for web server.			
installed-packages	Display installed packages in web server.			
skip-wizard	Skip the setup wizard on access.			
restart	Restart sbox-admin service.			

Note Use the

Use these commands with caution as some may restart the web UI.

## The agent Command - Management Center Node

**Gemini Agents** are a relatively new feature of Gemini Central available from Version 2.7 and above. For more details, refer to the '<u>Gemini Agents</u>' section of this Admin Guide, or the separate '**Gemini Central - Gemini Agents Quick Start Guide**'.

The ability to distribute **Gemini Agents** is disabled at the Management Center by default.

To enable the **Gemini Agent distribution** feature and receive confirmation of the download URI;

Login at the terminal interface of your **Management Center** instance using the '**sbox**' account, and type the following command;

```
sbox agent --download-link
```

This will return the **download URI** link which can be used at any remote instance. Be sure to copy this for easy reference. Naming convention of the agent includes the date of release and the version number as follows; gemini-agent-<**YY**>.<**MM**>-<**Ver**>

```
[sbox@gemini-1c8d22 ~]$ sbox agent --download-link
https://10.2.x.x:4444/download/agent/gemini-agent-20.06-15.tar.gz
```

Alternatively, please obtain the latest Gemini Agent binary from support@geminidata.com

The following '**agent**' commands are relevant to the **remote** Splunk host running the **Gemini Agent** binary and these should be run from a Terminal session local to the Splunk installation.

#### agent status

If at any time you want to verify whether the **Gemini Agent** service is active, use the following command;

```
sudo /opt/gemini/agent/bin/agent status
```

A typical response from this command would be the following message

+ Gemini Agent is running.

#### agent --version

If at any time you wish to know which **Gemini Agent** version is active on this instance, run the following command;

sudo /opt/gemini/agent/bin/agent --version

The output will return the date and version of the Agent in the format: <YY>.<MM>-<Version>

#### agent restart

If you wish to restart the existing Gemini Agent service, run the following command;

sudo /opt/gemini/agent/bin/agent restart

#### agent configure

If you wish to go through the initial Gemini Agent configuration script again, for instance if the local Splunk admin password has been changed, run the following command;

sudo /opt/gemini/agent/bin/agent configure

## agent uninstall

If for any reason you need to uninstall the **Gemini Agent** use the following command. Note that in order to upgrade the Gemini Agent it is first required that the existing Gemini Agent is first uninstalled.

```
sudo /opt/gemini/agent/bin/agent uninstall
```

## agent stop/start

If you need to stop or start the agent manually, use the following commands;

```
sudo /opt/gemini/agent/bin/agent stop
sudo /opt/gemini/agent/bin/agent start
```

The above process is also applicable to host machines without Splunk already installed. Splunk will be installed with the attributes specified during the Gemini Agent configuration.

## Commands for Information Gathering

## The version Operator

Used with the sbox command, this operator will display the currently installed version of Gemini Central

sbox --version

## The model Operator

Used with the sbox command, this operator will acquire the model of this instance

sbox --model

On virtualized environments or on public clouds, the returned string represents the Hypervisor type (ie. vmware) or on Amazon EC2, "HVM domU" will be returned.

## The service-tag Operator

Used with the sbox command, this operator returns the unique service tag of the appliance. This could be useful during a Support issue, and Customer Support may ask for this value when contacted.

sbox --service-tag

NotesPlease ensure you include all these details, when opening a Customer<br/>Support Request.<br/>This information is automatically included within the **Diagnostic Report**<br/>created using the Manage web UI.

## The admin Command (installed-packages operator)

The '**admin**' command can be used with the '--installed-packages' operator to produce a list of installed packages and their versions. This could be useful for audit purposes.

Use the command with the '--installed-packages' operator as shown below;

sbox admin --installed-packages

The screen below shows a typical output from this command;

[[sbox@gemini-0800277c2740 ~]\$ sbox admir 
Installea package
SD0X-C0Pe-2.2-120.X80_04
sbox-uno-2.2-62.x86_64
sbox-hadoop-2.2-228.x86_64
sbox-driver-2.2-21.x86_64
sbox-pepsi-2.2-27.x86_64
sbox-admin-2.2-116.x86_64
sbox-license-2.2-50.x86_64
sbox-console-2.2-63.x86 64
shox-snlmar-2 2-64 x86 64
show - os - 2 2-68 x86 64
$\frac{3500}{5}$ 03 2.2 00.000_04
SD0X-Fullover-2.2-29.X80_04
SD0X-S0lution-2.2-124.X86_64
sbox-theme-2.2-29.x86_64

## The service Command (status operator)

The '**service**' command can be used with the '**status**' operator to obtain the status of Gemini components.

Use the command with the 'status' operator as shown below;

sbox service --status

The screen below shows a typical output from this command;

[[sbox@gemini ~]\$ sbox servicestatus		
Service	Status	Boot-start
sbox-pepsi	True	True
gemini-intcenter-client	True	True
gemini-deployment-manager	True	True
gemini-deployment-client	True	True
sbox-hadoop	True	True
sbox-core	True	True
sbox-admin	True	True

## The service Command (listen-port operator)

This administrative command operator could be used to find exposed network ports. Exposed ports would normally include the Web UI TCP port exposed to the connected network. To obtain a full list of the open ports and their exposure, run the '--listen-port' operator as shown below;

```
sbox service --listen-port
```

The screen below shows a typical output from this command;

[[sbox@gemini ~]\$ sbox servicelisten-port		
Process	Port	Host
Admin Web	443	*
Admin API	4444	*
Hadoop Manager API	8797	*
Core API	8686	127.0.0.1
Deployment Client	8888	*
Deployment Manager	8889	*
PEPSI	9321	*
Integration Center Client	59000	127.0.0.1

Notes

The wildcard '\*' character means that the related network port is open on *all* active network interfaces.

If '127.0.0.1' is shown in the Host column, it means that the port is not exposed to any externally connected network and will allow only 'Host' based communication.

## The system Command (info operator)

The '**system**' command can be used with the '--info' operator to display hardware and software information. This is useful for collecting system information.

Use the command with the '--info' operator as shown below;

sbox system --info

The screen below shows a typical output from this command;

```
sbox@gemini-0f2fd9 ~]$ sbox system --info
java_home
                /usr/lib/jvm/jre/
memory_usage
                          3079756
                cache
                          734144
                          1031596
                          1308720
                free
                buffers
                          5296
virt_what
                vmware
                java version "1.8.0_192"
java_version
Java(TM) SE Runtime Environment (build 1.8.0_192-b12)
Java HotSpot(TM) 64-Bit Server VM (build 25.192-b12, mixed mode)
                a130a300-86d1-4e64-9c9a-ff250e9f4c82
boot_id
                /usr/lib/jdk1.8.0_192
java_directory
open_ports
                111
                443
                760
                768
                2534
```

## Commands for Troubleshooting

## The admin Command (Troubleshooting)

A summary of the '**admin'** command and options is given below, and can be shown at the terminal at any time by typing '**sbox admin**'.

Jsage: sbox admin [OPTIONS]			
[OPTIONS]			
reset-password	Reset password of web UI admin user.		
-set-password	Set password for web UI admin user.		
gen-ssl	Regenerate SSL keys for web server.		
installed-packages	Display installed packages in web server.		
skip-wizard	Skip the setup wizard on access.		
restart	Restart sbox-admin service.		

## The admin Command (reset-password operator)

The 'admin' command can be used with the '--reset-password' operator to reset the Manage Web UI 'admin' password.

This can be invaluable if the Customer has forgotten their web UI password. It will unlock the account and set a randomly generated password.

Use the command with the '--reset-operator' operator as shown below;

```
sbox admin --reset-password
```

The screen below shows a typical output from this command;

```
[[sbox@gemini-0800277c2740 ~]$ sbox admin --reset-password
+ Set admin password....
Now you can login Gemini Enterprise Manager by 'admin' user and password '92b8bf67'.
```

## The admin Command (set-password operator)

The '**admin**' command can be used with the '-**set-password**' operator to set a new password instead of using a randomly generated string as with the '--reset-password' operator. **Note:** that only one hyphen (-) is used with this operator as opposed to two (--).

Use the command with the '-set-password' operator as shown below;

sbox admin -set-password <new password>

where '<new\_password>' has to be replaced with the desired password.

It is generally recommended to change the admin password using the Web UI, and then to change it using the CLI as shown here.

## The admin Command (gen-ssl operator)

The '**admin**' command can be used with the '--gen-ssl' operator to reset the SSL certificate used by the web UI.

This can be useful if the web UI is unavailable due to certificate issues (e.g. expired or invalid certificate).

Use the command with the '--gen-ssl' operator as shown below to reset the SSL certificate;

```
sbox admin --gen-ssl
```



**Important:** This will overwrite any custom private key and certificate installed using the Manage Web GUI. It is recommended to backup private keys and certificates using the Manage backup feature from the Web UI before performing this operation.

## The network Command (reset operator)

The '**network**' command can be used with the '--**reset'** operator to reset the network interface settings and remove any IP bondings.

Following the running of this command, basic network settings will be set to default and will have to be configured again (see <u>The network Command</u> section above for details);

sbox network --reset

## The service Command (restart operator)

The '**service**' command can be used with the '--**restart'** operator to restart the administrative services of Manage. This may be requested by the Gemini Customer Support department during a technical issue.

Additionally, this action could be performed if the Web UI is unresponsive for some reason.

Use the command with the '--restart' operator as shown below to restart Gemini services with immediate effect;

```
sbox service --restart
```

The screen below shows a typical output from this command;

```
[[sbox@gemini-0800277c2740 ~]$ sbox service --restart
+ Restarting services......
+ All services have been restarted.
```

## The splunk Command

A summary of the '**splunk'** command and options is given below, and can be shown at the terminal at any time by typing '**sbox splunk**'.

Usage: sbox splunk [OPTIONS]		
[OPTIONS] kill reset_environment_db backup_setting_ <file></file>	Remove Splunk instance. Clean up Splunk environment settings. Backup Splunk settings.	
restore_setting <file></file>	Restore Splunk settings.	

The '**splunk**' command can be used with the '--kill' operator to remove the installed Splunk instance in its entirety; including the binary file, configurations, and all ingested data.

sbox splunk --kill

Notes Warning!: All Splunk configs and data will be deleted. This is not a recoverable action. Use with caution.

## **Reset Splunk Environments**

The '**splunk**' command can be used with the '--**reset\_environment\_db'** operator to reset the Splunk Environments database.

This is designed to remove the Splunk Environments information from Manage. During the process, you will be asked if you also want to remove Splunk. This is an important question to which you would normally respond '**NO**'.

This might be necessary if unintended actions have in some way corrupted the **Splunk Environments** dashboard.

Use the command with the '--reset\_environment\_db' operator as shown below to reset the Splunk Environments database;

```
sbox splunk --reset environment db
```

	Use with care, and watch for the prompts at the console. If answered incorrectly, all Splunk installations in the environment will also be removed. Read any prompt messages with care and act accordingly.
Note	This command replaces the previous commands (Ver <2.6)
	sbox splunkkill
	sbox splunkundo-manager

## The system Command (patch operator)

The '**system**' command can be used with the '**--patch'** operator to apply patches to Manage. This could be in the case that the Manage Web UI is inaccessible.

Upload the patch to Gemini Central before running this command.

Use the command with the '--patch' operator as shown below to apply a patch without relying on the web interface;

sbox system -patch <patch file>

The screen below shows a typical output from this command;

## **Commands for System Operations**

Additional commands are available specific to interactive shells from the console.

Note: The commands listed below related to System Operations are restricted from being used through SSH sessions and have to be typed at the terminal!

## System Reboot

To reboot the Gemini instance, just type;

reboot

## System Power Off

The shut down the Gemini instance, just type;

poweroff

## **Default Passwords for CLI Operations**

Only two accounts are provisioned for command-line access to the instance by default. If **Tableau** has been installed the default suggested password is suggested below:

OS account	default password	Description
sbox	facing jet function drive	Used for Manage administration
splunk	think adventure kitchen chest	Used for Splunk administration
tableau	tableau	(when Tableau has been installed)

All users will be required to change the default password upon initial login;



All OS User accounts have a default expiry of 60 days on their accounts. If you have changed the SSH passwords from their defaults, and you wish to freeze them for the future, navigate to the **Settings / Password Policy** dashboard and remove the checkmark from the relevant box.